

DISCIPLESHIP

for king Jesus



LEARN BIBLE EVANGELISM  
THEMES ON HOW TO BE A  
NEW TESTAMENT  
LEADER/MENTOR.

JOSEPH SULLIVAN

# Discipleship for King Jesus:

*Learn Bible evangelism themes on how to be a New Testament leader/mentor*

---

## **Evangelism training workbook**

*This book has no copyright. Print, distribute, and add parts of the book to your content, as you wish. Use this Bible-based content for the glory of our great God. Maranatha!*

---

## **The goal of this book:**

*The New Testament function of leadership is to produce more leaders. In matters of evangelism, we want to create self-reliant, independent men and women leaders, who can replicate what they learn. We don't want to create codependency in our work as evangelism teachers. Evangelism is mentorship. Let us train others to be more like the Chief Evangelist and Role model, Jesus Christ. Jesus mentored others. Then sent those He mentored out. We want to be like our Lord. (Matthew 4:19)*

---

## **A note to evangelism students:**

***For individuals:** For maximum growth as an evangelist and as a leader, I encourage the students of evangelism to read through this lesson book. Then repeat the process, (individually). Read this book from beginning to end. Try to get through this book 5 times a year. Each rereading will reinforce the material and intertwine the themes into your heart and soul. As you develop in evangelism you will view this book differently, depending on where you're at in your spiritual journey as your moving up the mountain. As you grow more, (as a worker/leader in evangelism) things will pop out at you as reread this content. You'll find that new insights will come to you. That is how the process is in all areas of life, the more we experience and grow the more we'll see. This book is no different.*

***Best way to study:** Down the road...You may wish to teach this material or maybe just the themes within this book. Regardless of whether you choose to teach or not these themes, I encourage you to go through this content, as if you have been asked to teach a Bible class at church, using this book. Read this content for yourself but also read this as a teacher would in prepping for a class. This book can help you mentor others, in your Bible study groups, devotional gatherings, etc. So, give thought (as you read this material) to how you can touch others through the lessons you read within this book. I've found studying content with this mindset is the best way to learn and grow.*

**Why do I ask for such dedication by making these requests?** *For this simple reason, the material is Biblical, the themes are seldom addressed within the churches and the need for leadership is great. We need more leaders within the kingdom. The familiarization of this content will bless you and you will be a blessing, (as you apply what you learn from this content).*

**For groups:** *As a class pace yourself and take your time. The chapters are meaty and may take many classes to finish. The goal is growth and application. Teachers encourage your students to read the content ahead of time and to fill out the exercises to the best of their ability. The classes will help reinforce the material and drive home the points. Also, as a teacher, you can further highlight the points. The students can also share new insights they may find within their own studies. Encourage the class students to do the reading and rereading of the content yearly as well. Such activities will further help to cement these concepts into the student's life. The more you read the book's Bible-based content the more it will seep into you and your subconscious. The more you read this content the more ideas you'll get concerning your evangelism work. You'll continually be developed by the material as you read it, again and again. New perspectives will come to light as you plant deep roots inside yourself, through the regular reading of this book. The actions outlined within this material will become more natural to you, as you go over this content.*

**Best to use digital copies:** *I recommend using this content digitally to save on printing costs. Our material also has active links to useful content and resources. You can access a digital copy on [www.churchofchristevangelism.com](http://www.churchofchristevangelism.com) or download the material in [Word](#) or [PDF](#). This book can be used during personal study or when with a Bible group or during a church class. You can use your tablet or cell phone, or another digital device. For filling out the questions (from the booklet before Bible class) you can get a binder or notebook to use for writing down the answers.*

*If you still want a physical copy, you can pay to have it printed (at the lowest cost) and shipped to you using this [link](#). I'd use the cheapest shipping. They ship slowly no matter what shipping you choose. It'll save on cost. :)*

**The exercises:** *As you read and go over the exercise, you'll find new insights to help you develop. The more you do this process, (with each new reading of the book) the more you'll intertwine the concepts of this book into your life, to further enhance leadership growth and spiritual development in evangelism. Some of the exercises are very detailed and extensive. Do what you can, with where you are at. As you read and reread this book, you'll find, each new time, that you'll be able to go more in-depth into the exercises that are given.*

---

***"Your profession is not what brings home your weekly paycheck, your profession is what you're put here on earth to do, with such passion and such intensity that it becomes spiritual in calling." - Vincent van Gogh***

---

## Table of Contents:

### Chapter 1

Defining Bible Discipleship - *Page 5-16*

### Chapter 2

Further Exploring Spiritual Discipleship/Mentorship - *Page 17-20*

### Chapter 3

The Role of Discipleship in the Great Commission - *Page 21-42*

### Chapter 4

How to View the New Convert - *Page 43-67*

### Chapter 5

Raising up Future Evangelists and Leaders - *Page 68-79*

### Chapter 6

We were Born to Spiritually Reproduce - *Page 80-90*

### Chapter 7

The Storyline of Jesus – *Page 91-100*

### Chapter 8

“Leaders Who Make More Leaders” - *Page 101-140*

### Chapter 9

The Value of Prayer (in evangelism work)

- Part One: The Importance of Prayer in Jesus’ Life. - *Page 141-146*
- Part Two: How Should We Pray? - *Page 147-153*
- Part Three: Spiritual Warfare and Prayer - *Page 154-159*
- Part Four: The Power of Faith - *Page 160-170*
- Part Five: Going to the Faith Gym - *Page 171-174*
- Part Six: The Spiritual Need of Prayerful Fasting - *Page 175-191*

### Chapter 10

How to Plant and Grow a Church - *Page 191-213*

Church growth template and personal dedication from the author - *Page 214-227*

Bonus: Evangelism “Journal” booklet - *Page 1-32*





## Chapter 1: Defining Bible Discipleship

*What is discipleship? How does the scripture break down this word?*

**Discipleship written within the Bible is connected to a word often used in today's culture.** To those who coach a little league sport, or run a company, to parents who spend time raising children, or to women who head up a Girl Scout meeting, you have been in the role of the "mentor."

This term (mentor) holds great weight in its capabilities of molding lives and in instilling positive habits. Did you know the origin of mentorship is Biblical in principle?

God speaks of the virtues of mentorship in **Proverbs 27:17** when the passage states, as ***"Iron sharpens iron, so one man sharpens another."***

We think of a karate teacher being a mentor or an influential and caring high school teacher as a mentor. Many of us can look back at individuals in our lives who have helped us to become the people we are today.

The word “mentor,” as we think of it today was given a different name 2,000 years ago. The work of mentorship is the same New Testament ideal we can read in the Bible for discipleship.

Discipleship in New Testament Greek is *mathētēs* (μαθητής). This term means “one who engages in learning through instruction from another.” Other terms for disciple are “pupil” and “learner.” <https://biblehub.com/greek/3101.htm>

A cooking class can “disciple” you into a better cook. A personal fitness coach can “disciple” you in diet and the best workout routines and exercises. When we look within the pages of the Bible, we read of the story of Jesus. We read of the Lord’s work of teaching others. We read what Christ did when we sought to make disciples for God. In the Gospels, we see a spiritual application given to this term called “discipleship.”

To mentor or disciple, a person is to mold someone into a certain way of being. No individual goes to one workshop and has all the answers in any given field made known to them. Nor does a person immediately change into a better version of themselves in any area they are pursuing for self-development when just starting out. Discipleship in any area is a **process**.

*Let us also note this key fact, **mentorship is leadership**. For when one mentors another, one is leading another to a certain goal, and truth. When we mentor another we lead them to new levels of personal development. We will cover this in more detail as we go further within this book.*

---

**“Give a man a fish, and you feed him for a day. Teach a man to fish, and you feed him for a lifetime.”**

**– Author unknown.**

---

---

## Lesson Thought Exercises:

**A. *Think of those (people) who helped mentor you. Who played a role in your spiritual development? What did they do? Write down their names. Write how they impacted you.***

**B. *Who in the Old Testament helped mentor another spiritually? Name as many people you can think of. Try to be as detailed as you can in outlining how they mentored another person or persons.***

**C. *Who in the New Testament helped mentor another spiritually? Try to be as detailed as you can in outlining how they mentored another person or persons.***

**D. *What are your spiritual talents God has given you? (Matthew 25:14-30)***  
*How can you use your gifts to help others? Reflect upon this question. Pray about it. Look within your life, within yourself, within your past, to try to uncover what gifts our Father has placed within you. Write these talents down.*



---

## Applicational Lesson Exercises:

*E. Think of ways you can mentor others within the kingdom.*

*Brainstorm and dig down deep to think of as many ideas as you can on ways you can do this type of work. Write these ideas down.*

**A. Here are some ideas.** I challenge you to keep brainstorming to find more. The role of a leader is mentorship. Be ever looking for new ways to help God's people grow.

1. You can offer to help ask a kid to help you hold the doors when people are walking through the door Sunday morning.
2. Invite teens to visit the shut-ins at a nursing home with you.
3. When making communion bread, invite the young girls to come over to help.
4. Have a class (at your home) to train people in song leading, public speaking, methods of Bible class teaching, etc.
5. Invite college-age students over for a devotional. Have the young men help you, in song leading, and in reading scripture, etc.
6. Have church people over to write cards for visitors and the sick/discouraged at church.
7. Ask the kids to help you pass out the church bulletin at church.
8. When teaching Bible class for the kids, try to get the children to do more proactive things within the class, like leading a prayer, reading scripture, and even teaching parts of the lesson, if they are old enough, to help mentor them. Find ways to get your students to step up and be more involved in proactive work.
9. Invite interested saints over to (give them ways that will) help them *learn how to teach*. You can teach the first lesson, then have each student in the group teach the following lesson. The more your group does this the more comfortable and experienced they will become as teachers.
10. If you are in such a position, try to include new converts into the roles of worship. This will help such babies grow into stronger spiritual adults.
11. Encourage college students to help you pass out visitor cards at church.

**B. Look in your church for someone you can offer to help mentor,** (keep in mind, sometimes people say “no.”) Think of specific people who you can offer to help in certain ways. Who can you mentor? Write down their names. Write down ways you can help others. Each week seek someone to help mentor. The exercises previously done will give you helpful ideas that you can use in mentoring others.

---

***Class notes:***

*Know that a good evangelism leader is a mentor, and mentorship is not just to be found in outreach. To be an excellent mentor you need to seek all forms of mentorship. The attitude of a leader is found in helping others. By doing the exercises in A.B. and C. Your actions will help create the right mindset and attitude for seeking the best for others. We'll get more into this in further lessons. These above exercises will complement your evangelism mentorship and help support you as you grow as a mentor. They will help pave the way for your development as an evangelistic mentor.*

---

C. *What are evangelistic ways to mentor others? Write down ways you can help mentor others in evangelism. Brainstorm ideas that you think of. Reflect on these ideas. Go back here and write down more ideas, if they come to you.*

**D. Here are some ideas.** I challenge you to keep brainstorming to find more. The role of a leader is mentorship. Be ever looking for new ways to help God's people grow. *(Note: some of these examples may seem advanced. Just start where you're at. Start off small and slowly work your way up. Growth and development takes time. Remember evangelism is like anything else, it is a process.)*

1. **Invite new converts to an evangelism group meeting the church is doing.**
2. **Have a devotional night.** Encourage your kids in your family to make a devotional lesson about a theme on evangelism. Have them practice giving the devotional to you, your spouse, and family.
3. **Have a college student join you in a "church new convert class."** After he sees how the class is run and how you teach, invite him to teach a lesson.
4. **Invite church members to go door-knocking.** Head it up, help the interested saints out who attend.
5. **Encourage your children to leave a church invitation card at a restaurant.**
6. **If you are teaching a church Bible class for kids, ask the children to make a devotional lesson on a certain topic and to invite their friends.**
7. **Teach an evangelism class.** Those who listen to you and apply what they learn are being mentored by you.
8. **Have a prayer meeting at your home, on the theme of evangelism.** Invite others to pray with you on this important topic.
9. **Encourage church members to help you greet the non-Christian visitors.**
10. **Teach an evangelism lesson to your family, or to your Bible study group.**
11. **Have your kids go with you to a nursing home to ask the elderly if they would like "to read the Bible with them and their family."**

12. Encourage your family to have an “invite your friend to church” day.
13. Get a group together for weekly Bible studies at Starbucks.
14. Invite church friends to go pass out flyers (and invite people to Bible studies) at a nearby college campus.
15. Have breakfast once a month at a restaurant near the church to meet with the saints to talk about evangelism ideas.
16. Teach your Sunday school class an evangelism workbook.

---

### **Special note to Preachers:**

You are doing a needed and valued work. You have God-given opportunities that such a work gives to you. I'd like to share some thoughts on how you can help with mentoring your congregation. To make evangelism a part of the church's culture, regular lessons and sermons on evangelism can be taught to mentor your congregation into evangelists.

*The reasons “why” God wants us to share Jesus can be shared. This helps create accountability and personal responsibility within the church for doing outreach work.*

*Preachers, you are in a mentorship role. You are mentoring others (through the Word of God) each time you speak a sermon or lesson. You can help create an evangelism culture within the church, by fostering the spirit of personal responsibility within the congregation.*

---

### **Special note to Elders:**

You are in the honored position of being both a church servant and a church leader. You are given the serious role of being the shepherds of the flock. You have a mighty task before you and an important responsibility. As you know and probably have seen through the years, a church rises and falls with the leaders. A people without a spiritual mission and vision for growth will perish. A church that has such a leadership will end up dying if things don't change. The fact that you're reading this book says you're proactive and that you desire growth for your congregation.

For a church leadership to get an evangelism culture created within a church, there must be consistent teaching and focus given to the themes of soul saving. Regular reminders of personal accountability helps root the congregation to this noble cause.



To cement goals and ideas within the congregation, create a vision. Meet with the other elders and make plans to help ensure the longevity of your congregation. Research growth strategies on evangelism that can help your group grow and after planning/praying about it, implement those strategies. As time goes by, as you and your church develop and learn, and refine your strategies, as you learn from your mistakes.

An apathetic leadership has been the end of many congregations. But you're not lukewarm, are you? The fact that you are reading this content, at this very moment, says you're invested.

If you have passion, interest, and zeal for Jesus, you can help your church group grow. I believe in you. I know you have these traits. People don't sit down and invest time, energy, and resources into a book if they are callous at heart and indifferent. There is a saying that says, "Everything rises and falls on leadership." Which is true. For what is a nation, a church, a community, or a home, if it has no true leaders? You are in this role. You can help make a difference within your congregation. You have the opportunity to create effective change.

Sadly, I've seen preachers and elders undermine God's evangelism efforts and destroy whole congregations. I've seen new converts die, for this one simple reason, spiritual "indifference." Your love for His Word will make a great difference.

To grow a church: Find ways to teach evangelism, promote evangelism, and ways of getting the church to do evangelism. Be always hungry to learn and grow in this soul-saving work. Implement an outreach/growth plan with the other elders And regularly teach, promote, and have the church practice evangelism. This book will help with these mentioned aims.

---

***Dear Students: These are words worth remembering.***

A New Testament church is an evangelistic church. A New Testament Christian does evangelism. A New Testament Christian is an evangelist. And a good evangelist is always hungry for knowledge, is always active, and thus is always growing.

In regard to evangelism, have a vision, plan, imagine the results you want, and dwell on your goals and the benefits of having those goals met. Know that... Your mind must arrive at your destination before your body does.

Know the Christian Walk is a road to be traveled with purpose. Create missions for your life, that get you filled with meaning. Find evangelism pursuits. Have a "why" that gets you out of bed in the morning. Have a powerful life goal that feels like a spiritual calling. Your home can and should be centered around such ideals. Include your family in such goals. And help nurture, support, and encourage them to create their own spiritual goals for life. Let evangelism be part of such a life of purpose.

God wants us to help others grow more in His image. We need leaders who multiply and make more leaders. We need mentors who will help equip others in kingdom work (through Bible teaching/exampleship). We need leaders who will help God's people develop as preachers, elders, song leaders, and Bible class teachers. We need such people to help mentor people into better spouses, better parents, and into better evangelists.

Mentoring others is not a business model. It's a divine work. It's a Bible-based work that we can read about in the Gospels, the book of Acts, as well as other key places within the Old and New Testament.

Mentorship is powerful. It can challenge others to grow. As mentorship has 2,000 years ago, changed lives. Mentorship has the potential to change lives, today.

---

**SURROUND YOURSELF WITH**



**THOSE ON THE SAME  
MISSION AS YOU**



## Chapter 2: Further Exploring Spiritual Discipleship/Mentorship

In matters of spirituality, the Bible speaks of mentorship in two instances in the following passage... ***“But now, LORD, you are our father. We are the clay, and you are our potter. All of us are the work of your hand.” (Isaiah 64:8)***

In this passage we are told God *views us as a **father** does his child*. All parents know they have a special role in their children’s lives. They can teach, guide, and live as role models. Parents serve as examples to their children, in how they live and conduct themselves. Mothers have a special role in nurturing the family unit daily. These elements of parenthood are all aspects of mentorship.

The father has the responsibility to lead and shows support for those family members in the house. Parents can form, (for better or worse) the character of their children that can last a lifetime. The passage in Isaiah says God is in this same role in our own lives. He is our guide, teacher, example, role model, nurture, leader, and supporter.

In this serious venue, let us look at the passage again. What other discipleship traits do we read about? God calls Himself the **potter** and us the **clay**. If we allow ourselves to be soft in our hearts and yielding to His will, the Master craftsman can mold us more into His likeness and image.

But how does God mentor us (as a father) and mold us (as clay)? Our Lord has given us the Word to disciple us as pupils and mold us into His image of holiness, **(2 Peter 1:3-4)**. Yet neither God nor His Son (in this modern age) have come down from heaven to teach us. So, how can people learn the truth without being taught?

To find these answers we need to look to the Bible and its message. God's truth says, we are the teacher's that providence uses for God, **(Romans 10:14-17)**. A teacher or preacher is just one who proclaims the message of God, the gospel. We are to share His "glad tidings." We all have that responsibility. **(Jude 23)**

The Lord uses people (like you and me) as instruments of righteousness, (for His good works), **(Romans 6:13;18)** and as vessels of truth, **(2 Corinthians 4:5-7)**.

Once someone has taught us the truth, we are commanded to likewise teach others, **(2 Timothy 2:2)**. We are those who impart God's glory in what we teach to others, **(2 Corinthians 3:2-6;8-9;18)**.

We are God's hands for the molding of the clay, and we are those who share the means (through truth) of divine adoption, to those who are without a spiritual Father, in this world, **(Galatians 4:5-7)**.

This is what a true believer is supposed to be. We must share Jesus and impact others (in word and deed) as mentors within the kingdom. We all must follow Jesus' Word to be the New Testament's definition of disciple.

And a Bible based disciple (of Jesus) is just another name for a "Christian." In the scriptures, the term disciple, is used interchangeably with the term Christian, **(Acts 11:26)**. A term that uses the word "Christ" with an "IAN" at the end. The naming itself implies who such people belong to.

Jesus expected a pupil of His, to follow Him and the truth He gave. A new disciple is more than just a baptized believer. Part of the saving process is in living a new and transformed life, after conversion, **(Romans 6:1-4)**.

*This is what the Bible gives as a standard for us to know, whether we are God's disciples or not... "Jesus said to the Jews who had believed him, **"If you abide in my word, you are truly my disciples,"** (John 8:31).*

*One of the aspects of truth, (that we must obey) is shown in how we disciple others through evangelism. If we are to follow Jesus as disciples we must live as Jesus did. We must seek to save souls. (Matthew 4:19) We will get into this more in the following chapter.*

-----

## **Lesson Thought Exercises:**

***A. How are we supposed to be a New Testament disciple of Jesus?***

***B. How does God mold (mentor) us into His image?***

***C. Are all Christians supposed to mentor/disciple others?***

***D. How are we used to mentor others as instruments?***

***E. How do we disciple others through Jesus?***

---

## **Applicational Lesson Exercises:**

- ***Begin reading the book "Master Plan of Evangelism" by Robert Coleman.*** It is a short book that takes about 3 hrs. to read. Try to have it finished by the end of this workbooks group class/or personal reading that you are doing of this material. The ***"Master Plan of Evangelism"*** is also in audiobook format. Choose how you study this content. You can read the material, or you can choose to listen to it instead. Type ***"Master Plan of Evangelism PDF"*** Or ***"Master Plan of Evangelism audiobook,"*** (or other search terms like ***paperback, or hardcopy, etc.***) on your computer in your search engine to find helpful online resource. I've not found a better Bible based study source detailing Jesus' work in discipleship and evangelism then in this Bible study booklet. I encourage you to pay careful attention and take notes.





## Chapter 3: The Role of Discipleship in the Great Commission

In the Great Commission, Christ tells the Christians too...

*“Therefore, go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely, I am with you always, to the very end of the age.” (Matthew 28:19-20).*

This Bible passage shows us that discipleship is our duty and moral responsibility. From this Biblical commission, we read...that as Christians, we must **“go,” (search for opportunities to meet people)** then **“make,” (others into disciples)** then **“teach”** those **baptized** to **“obey everything”** which would include the Bible teaching of Jesus to follow the Great Commission.

We follow our Lord's commission, when we mentor others by teaching the saved to save. We need to help instruct the new disciples to follow the same pattern as the commission has shown to us, (that of going out, making disciples, and mentoring them in the Word).

The Great Commission is not relegated to just a few people or to the paid preacher at a church building. We as Christians are supposed to use the Word of God as mentors to **teach, train, correct, and rebuke** others. When we are ready to use His truth in this manner, we will be ***"equipped for every good work."*** (2 Timothy 3:16-17). So that we can say with confidence, that we are ***"ready to give an answer for the hope within us."*** (1 Peter 3:15)

When we save others and they learn more of God's Word, through our words, we follow this command within the Great Commission of ***"teaching them."*** (Matthew 28:18-20) When we follow God's truth, (in training others) we will also help equip those who hear the Bible to be better spiritual leaders within the church, home, workplace, community, etc.

---

### **We need to work together, as a team in doing the Great Commission.**

The church is a team, we must all play together for the same side. In football what would you think if you saw the star quarterback take the ball to the wrong goal or tackle his own teammate? In the churches too often evangelism work (and other Bible-based work) is not undermined from the world, so much as from a preacher, elder, or brother.

Remember we need to use our energies constructively to win in the spiritual challenges we face. To do this we must be unified, not only in shared acceptance of Bible doctrine but in the practice of what it teaches, (love, selflessness, unity, peace, Bible-based service).

Involve the leaders, people will support what they help to create. Try to get members to invest in the work. People will defend, fight for, support and love what they have been involved with creating.

Energies are better used constructively to build up the kingdom in evangelism than in gossip, slander, and needlessly nitpicking the new converts and the hardworking saints that are out there doing evangelism.

Yet too often in some churches, people would rather invest their time, energy and resources in strife that destroys and tears down, than for the works of love that builds up and heals. The churches that grow will have people that are willing to work, despite the petty behavior of others. And blessed is the worker who does not have such issues in their local congregation.

A sign of a healthy church is a group of people that are so busy, with doing God's work in saving souls, helping the brethren, and promoting the truth, that they have no energy or time for idleness and fruits of such lackluster attitudes that come from the devil's workshop. You will seldom see a church on fire for souls and deeply invested in the brethren, in loving service and compassion, actively destroying itself with hate, gossip, malice and backbiting.

If you want a healthy church, leaders, get your church busy. Christians if you want a supportive congregation, encourage your brethren to get to their hands to the work of kingdom building.

I have heard excuses from COC college professors, from preachers, elders, from pillars within their church, that they don't have time to do evangelism. An invite to church or a Bible study takes less than 5 minutes. If a person has time to watch TV, go to the gym, hang with friends, socialize and take time to visit restaurants and other recreational locations to relax, then they have time for people going to Hell. We can even do such activities at our jobs, during our recreation, when doing family responsibilities, like attending our children's sports, etc. Excuses show a lack of compassion for people eternally damned. God tells us "To Love our neighbor as ourselves. **(Mark 12:30-31)** Would you, if ignorant of eternal judgement want someone, you know, to keep this news to themselves?

Jesus asked a religious teacher, in the parable of the Good Samaritan, **(Luke 10:29-37)** this question: Who is your neighbor? The teacher of the law replied, “the one who was shown mercy.” Jesus replied, “go and do likewise.” What greater act can we give then in saving a soul from the flames of Hell? **(Jude 23)** Being a good Samaritan goes beyond doing nice things for people or by helping them with worldly issues, it transcends to the spiritual. The best way to love one's neighbor is to try to save them.

If we believe (in heaven and hell) how can we be silent when we go through the weeks seeing those who are lost? If we know Christ died a brutal death for the broken men and women in our communities, how can we but not speak to others and share this news? If we remain silent, and hoard our salvation, our spiritual wealth, blessing, relationship with God, our eternal hope, our freedom from sin and Hell to ourselves, do you think we will hear from God on judgment day, “well done, my good and faithful servant?”

If we value our relationship with our God and feel the peace of Christ and the hope of heaven, how can we keep such wonderful truth to ourselves?

If we feel these things and know them to be true, we will spend our days, our weeks, our months, our seasons, our years, our lives to the active work of spreading seed in His fields. If we know we are forgiven and know the story of the cross, then Christ's love will compel us. The fear of judgement will spur us on. We should make that our goal of pleasing God, a priority by faithfully following the command to proclaim the kingdoms truth. As the scriptures say...

**2 Corinthians 5:9 "So \*we make it our goal to please him, whether we are at home in the body or away from it. 10 \*For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each of us may receive what is due us for the things done while in the body, whether good or bad. 11 Since, then, we know what it is to \*fear the Lord, we try to persuade others. What we are is plain to God, and I hope it is also plain to your conscience.**

**14 \*For Christ's love compels us, because we are convinced that one died for all, and therefore all died. and therefore, all died., and therefore all died. and therefore all died. 15 And he died for all, that those who live should no longer live for themselves but \*for him who died for them and was raised again."**

---

## The Great Commission and social media.

God has given us a white harvest. A global reach and tools like never before. We live in a golden age ripe with positive potential and possibilities, (cell phones, Wi-Fi, airplanes, cars, ads, social media, online videos, websites, eBooks, virtual audiences, TVs, we have access to physical and online Biblical resources and evangelism training. I can go on.)

We live in a huge nation (US) with a common tongue and even globally, many people in various cultures and countries know English, Britian, Ireland, Ukraine, the Philippines, etc. Never in the history of the world have we had such doors open. We live in a golden age unparalleled since the dawn of mankind.

Yet the church in America and the industrialized European nations are dying. Since the 1800 to our modern period in time, the churches in America have never been in more serious decline than they are right now.

The US country is declining in numbers, and the pandemic of spiritual death and congregational closers is taking place. God sees this. The potential in this golden age, He sees. He also sees the indifference (by many) in His kingdom.

Our Father knows of the silence towards these heart-breaking issues. Books could be written, articles and sermons could be shared, gospel meetings could be preached, lectureships could be taught on kingdom decline and Biblical themes to change the tide. Evangelism being chief.

We are given much potential in this golden age. Much is given. Much is expected. We are shown a white harvest. But too many **saints** dust off their scythe a handful of times a year, that is, if they even bother to work in His fields at all. Too many are distracted with other things, (house, job, family, hobbies, money, friends, recreation, sports, politics, TV, etc.)

I am always seeing on social media, people sharing things in great passion and enthusiasm on matters of politics bit these same Christians are silent when it comes to their Heavenly kingdom.

Too many have forgotten that we are pilgrims and strangers in this world.

When most if not all social media posts are about secular things, and not about spiritual, where are our minds focused on? If we share our cars, pets, weight loss photos, etc. But not Jesus, then what is our first love? Where is our heart centered as our greatest treasure? Our activities preach what we value the most.

Evangelism will come with opportunities but with them you will find opposition. If you speak up, people will try to stop you. The greater your work the more the devil will use others for his own ends. But remember this truth from **1 John 4:4**

**"Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is He that is in you, than he that is in the world.**

**What we value is what we proclaim: Kingdom change starts with the right attitude and focus.** Yet why is it that there are preachers silent on social media? Why is it that these same preachers only feel the need to promote their Bible teaching to just church assembly during the worship times of Sunday and Wednesday? Why are many Christians not sharing Jesus (on social media) except on a rare occasion, once every blue moon, during a gospel meeting?

Too often times...Christians on Facebook, YouTube, Twitter, Instagram, etc., will share their baby, their cat, their food they had for breakfast, their six-pack, their new home, their football team, their girlfriend, their favorite tv show, etc. But you hear crickets from them when it comes to what *they should want to share the most*, what *they should value most*, what *they should treasure most*, what *they should love the most*.

Why is that? Well, **"From the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks," (Luke 6:45)** And **"Where your treasure is so is your heart," (Matthew 6:21).**

If the heart does not hold up in worth God and His Word first, then the mouth will be silent. Simply put, if Christians are silent and prefer to esteem other things of this life and of the world over the Lord's heavenly things, it's a heart issue.



If I am excited about something, if it means the world to me, you better be sure I will not keep it to myself. But if I am ashamed, afraid, indifferent, etc., I will keep quiet.

The Apostles believed, loved the truth enough to die for it. They spend their lives proclaiming it. Social media is a platform that can reach a global audience and it is the least utilized tool within the kingdom for sharing Jesus.

The saints are silent, when they have more ways and means (cars, airplanes, Wi-Fi, internet, cell phones, social media, etc.) to reach others than ever before in history.

***The very reason you're reading this book, says your heart is directed towards higher things and that you want to share the eternal treasures of lasting worth with a poor, broken world. I thank you for your light and for your interest. You give me hope for the generations to come.***

## What does the Great Commission mean to us?

### How does it emotionally connect with us today?

To understand the great assignment, task, or “commission” as the term is normally called, we need to understand the divine reason for such a work. We need to understand personally “*why*” God has given us this spiritual calling.

The passage of **John 3:16** says, “***For God so loved (sacrificially, in all selflessness loved, - [agapaó](#)) the world (all of creation - [kosmos](#)) that He gave His only begotten (the one-and-only; a "one of a kind" - [monogenés](#)) Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.***”

This is a powerful verse. While we were unlovable, unworthy, (spiritually) dirty, and viewed as adversaries of God, (**Romans 5:10**) with no merit of our own, a timeless Being, a “Father” separated His Son with whom He had spent all eternity with, (by sending that Son to the world). That Son is a “one of a kind,” Being, who will forever be distinct from all of creation. He was allowed to be murdered for the “kosmos,” to take away the sins of the world, (**John 1:29**) for all time. (**John 1:29**)

In the Old Testament, the Israelites were described as dirty, undesirable, frail and in need of heavens support...and God rescued these people. (**Ezekiel 16:1-14**)

Like these Jews, we were the same. Our sins had made us undesirable, we were spiritually dirty, separated from our Creator (**Isaiah 59:2**) and vulnerable. Yet God picked us up, and gave us the name of sons and daughters, as adopted children. (**Galatians 4:4-7**). He took our sins away. “***As far as the east is from the west, so far has He removed our transgressions from us.***” (**Psalms 103:12**).

Without God’s divine grace, we are lost, we are doomed, we are spiritually weak. By our own merit alone we could not be saved.

As Isaiah 64:6 says, ***“But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags; and we all do fade as a leaf, and our iniquities, like the wind, have taken us away.”***

Even though our sins were filthy, dirty our Savior washed us and made us clean.

**Isaiah 1:18** ***“Come now, let us reason together, says the Lord: though your sins are like scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they are red like crimson, they shall become like wool.”***

Our Lord gave us a chance, He gave us hope. All Jesus asks is for us to help others receive this same blessing. He wants us to share the gift we have received with others. He wants us to spread the glad tidings of salvation.

When we can understand the enormous gift (emotionally) as well as mentally, we are enabled to follow what Paul writes in the passage of **2 Corinthians 5:14** ***“For Christ’s love compels us, because we are convinced that one died for all, and therefore all died. 15 And He died for all, that those who live should no longer live for themselves but for Him who died for them and was raised again.”***

The story of the cross should compel us to share that story. His love for us should make us feel excited, grateful, and eager to live a life that gives God glory and gives others hope. In this mind frame and attitude, we should no longer live for ourselves but for the cause of God.

We should die to the world and its evil allurements of willful sin. The gift of Jesus should be shared. We should feel compelled to share it out of our understanding of what we have, and its infinite value to others, (who also need this priceless gift).

For if we do not share it, our friends, our loved ones, our neighbors, that we see day in and day out, will be lost. In that context this chapter further declares our need of sharing Jesus.

**2 Corinthians 5:11** ***“Since, then, we know what it is to fear the Lord, we try to persuade others.”***

*The fear of Hell and of the Lord's judgement should move us to act!*

*This is our calling, this is our purpose, to be Jesus' ambassadors. We are saved and are expected to be servants of this ministry of soul saving. We were reconciled (having a restored relationship) to Christ and now we have His ministry of reconciliation. It is up to us to help others (restore their relationship with God) through the means of sharing with them the gospel.*

*As this chapter further details...*

**2 Corinthians 5:18** ***"All this is from God, who reconciled us to Himself through Christ and gave us the ministry of reconciliation. 20 We are therefore Christ's ambassadors, as though God were making his appeal through us.***

-----

## **Lesson Thought Exercises:**

- A. *Think of ways to stir up the fear of the Lord*** (concerning His judgment) to the degree that you feel like you need to persuade others to turn to Jesus.

***B. Does thinking of Jesus' sacrifice or does partaking of the Lord's supper, emotionally move you? Why does remembering Jesus touch you or why does it not move you?***

***C. Does Christ love compel you to be a better Christian and share Jesus? If so why does His sacrifice motivate you, if not why doesn't it?***

**D. Does Heaven seem real to you?** Does the promise of going there excite you? If it does, why? If not, how come?

**E. Does Hell feel real to you?** Does it bother you, knowing your loved ones are in danger of this place? Are you concerned that people you know, might be going there? If so, why? If not, why not?



---

## Applicational Lesson Exercise:

**Reading section:** Evangelism in the past started with revival. The great awakening, first started by words that touched the spirit of the American nation. For a revival to begin it first starts in people's hearts. On my right hand, I can count how many sermons I've heard about Heaven and Hell in my life. I'm almost 50 years old and have lived in many US states. Through the years, I have had membership in over a dozen churches. I have heard a total of 3 lessons on Hell and Heaven. How many sermons and Bible class lessons have you heard about these topics? Most people, if they reflect on past teachings, will remember very few. Why is that? Why do we talk about faith, love, grace, church organization, church attendance, church worship, baptism, etc. And leave out the eternal consequences of Heaven and Hell, in matters of the Word?

In the past, Heaven and Brimstone sermons were preached regularly during the first and second great awakening in America. During that time Heaven's coming judgement and the glory of eternity was proclaimed.

*In this age, regrettably, most of our churches and most preachers don't give sermons (regularly) on the themes of Hell and Heaven. In part that is why evangelism is received (in many congregations) with a lackluster attitude. If people are not reminded of these themes, graphicly and regularly, then why should they feel that soul-saving matters? In the great awakening during the 1800s, sermons were often centered around the themes of Hell and Heaven. The sermons were about God's judgment and the seriousness of being lost. Nowadays sermons are not regularly focused on these topics.*

At these periods of our history, evangelism was actively held up and practiced. Why do you think that was the case? People were reminded (through sermons) of what awaited them and their loved ones. These themes of Hell and Heaven were being emphasized (with passion) during that time period, on a regular basis.

Such lessons infected people with hope, (for Heaven) gratitude (for the cross) and fear. (of Hell).

In this age of dying churches and evangelism indifference in many congregations within the kingdom...maybe we need more sermons (fervently) preached regularly on these topics. Such lessons will serve as reminders. And will plant the seeds the churches need for growth.

The Bible says, ***“Faith comes from hearing and hearing from the Word of God.” (Romans 10:17).*** To better strengthen our faith in Heaven, Hell, maybe we need to be exposed to these themes more frequently, ***through what we hear***. And through ***our own personal Bible studies***.

---

## ***Class assignment***

***A. Find sermons or lessons:*** *I encourage you to find sermons or lessons online (videos or audio) that talk about these issues. Find sermons/lessons on Heaven and Hell. Listen to them often. At least once a week. This activity can help stir/motivate and inspire you in these matters. You can choose to substitute such weekly practices with other spiritual resources that talks about Heaven and Hell. You can find other valuable material from videos, books, audiobooks, Bible lessons, etc. Seek ways to stir yourself up and feel the realness of Heaven and Hell. You will find an internal shift taking place when you do this.*

---

## Applicational Lesson Exercise:

**Reading section:** Meditate on Bible themes. The scripture says for us to think on spiritual themes (within the Word) so as to know God's will. This process of Biblical renewal will transform a Christian. **Romans 12:2** ***"Do not conform to the pattern of this world but be transformed by the renewing of your mind. Then you will be able to test and approve what is the good, pleasing, and perfect will of God."***

Our minds are changed through Bible study, through prayer, through meditation on spiritual truths that we read from the Word of God. We can discern good and evil, when we know His God's will that is found in His Word. **(Hebrews 5:11-14)**

This process of study renews the inner man through the "knowledge" of God. We grow when we learn more about His spiritual persona/nature, image, and likeness. **(Colossians 3:10)** To become more "godly" godlike we strive to follow the truths that impress upon us His character, attitude, will and purpose. **(2 Peter 1:3-4)**

We need to take the time to deeply dwell on the spiritual topics of the Bible. The passage details this ideal in **Philippians 4:8** when it says ***"Finally, brothers and sisters, whatever is true, whatever is noble, whatever is right, whatever is pure, whatever is lovely, whatever is admirable—if anything is excellent or praiseworthy—think about such things."***

We read in the Bible the term **"meditate."** (**Joshua 1:8; Psalms 1:2**) This word in Hebrew is pronounced as "hagah" <https://biblehub.com/hebrew/1897.htm> and the word means to ***"moan, growl, utter, speak, muse."***

Have you ever been in deep study, (when studying for an exam at school or college) that you found yourself mouthing what you were reading, you may have even muttered a word out loud. In your deep pondering and musing, you may

even have made some noises in your throat. That is “hagah.” That is what the Bible term for **“mediation,”** means. It’s when you’re in such deep thought, that you lose yourself to your thoughts.

Too many preachers, elders, and saints, view the Bible truths and concepts as abstract “ideals” within His book and not as tangible “realities.” If they did, the kingdom would be on fire and evangelism would be actively done by every Christian believer. If Heaven was felt in its excitement and Hell in its dread... the gospel would be preached to the lost, from one side of the earth to the other, by the Lord’s people. If Jesus’ death was viewed gratefully as a gift, the saints would actively, eagerly share that gift with others.

If we are excited about our blessing of eternal life, (through Christ’s sacrifice) we would share it with others. *The fact your reading this says, your heart is focused on the right things.* May God bless you for this. We need more people like you in this matter. For the Bible student, it’s not enough to just read the words of the Bible, but we must deeply reflect upon them. **(Psalms 143:5; Psalms 119:148)**

We must mentally think on the word of God and apply the words, through careful meditation. **“We need to watch our life and doctrine closely. And persevere in doing this.” (1 Timothy 4:16)** In this matter, let us reflect upon our spiritual state and mediate upon that. **(Psalms 4:4)** By knowing where we are, we know where we need to go in growth and development.

---

## ***Class assignment***

**B. Do the exercise below to fuel your excitement for Heaven and your fear of Hell.** We will also focus on (Christ's) sacrifice, in the following outlined exercise. The goal is to make these themes more real to us in emotion and feeling:

**We want Heaven and Hell to become a stronger reality within us. We want to know the pain of Jesus's death for us. Let's go over the steps for meditating on these concepts. *Try to do this at least one day a week. You can set aside a day weekly for this practice.***

- 1. Find 1 scripture on Heaven and 1 scripture on Hell. After you do this, read a Bible passage of story about Jesus crucifixion and death.*
2. Read the Bible passages on these topics and reflect upon the meaning of these verses. Ask yourself, "What are they saying to you?" "How do you feel when reading them?"
3. Meditate on these verses: How to meditate? To meditate we need to deeply connect with a passage and its themes. This can be accomplished through intensive/reflective, thoughtful Bible study. When we really immerse ourselves within the Word, it is powerful. Meditating can be done through finding an emotional, mental connection to what is being read. That is what we will begin to cover now in **step 4.**

4. **One way you can meditate is through using your imagination: Ideas on meditating on Bible themes like Heaven.** Read the Bible passages on Heaven. As you read take time to reflect and “mediate” upon the words. As you read about Heaven, imagine what being there in Heaven will be like. I’d encounter you to do this practice before bed, or first thing in the morning, or during the day in a quiet, dark place.

As you read the Bible passages on Heaven, imagine in detail, the visual aspects of **Heaven**. Try to tie the concepts of Heaven, emotionally, to the greatest/special/emotionally uplifting moments of your life. Think in vivid detail on those past memories and allow yourself to feel those past experiences and sensations. And tell yourself that, “Heaven will be even better.”

If you think about what the Bible verses says about Heaven, and you imagine in graphic detail being there, it will start a process to feed your hunger for this place. If you can picture your happiest moments in life and know Heaven will be even better...you’ll be starting a process that will begin to fan your excitement for Heaven.

*If you can read the Bible passages on the wonders of Heaven and imagine those wonders in graphic detail, picturing yourself there, then your strengthening your beliefs in the realness of Heaven.* Think of your loved ones (who are saved) there with you. Think of their joy. The more you do this practice (as you read the Bible) the more Heaven will feel real to you.

The Bible talks about reflecting/meditating on the promises of God. **(Psalms 119:148)** Heaven is one of the Lord's precious promises. When we are in Heaven we will be with God. We need to spend time just meditating on our Father, Creator and Friend. **(Psalms 63:6)**.

Knowing we will someday be with Him. In remembering our Father, we need to remember His works, like Jesus' sacrifice, His good gifts He's given us in life, etc. **(Psalms 143:5/Psalms 77:10-12)**. This is a bonding process and great peace, gratitude, and a deeper feeling of intimacy. Such remembrances should be done when picturing ourselves with God, forever in Heaven.

Let us imagine and dwell on such spiritual things. **(Philippians 4:8)** **As you read the words of the Bible on this topic, think how they spiritually apply to you. Am I going there? Are those I love going there? Does this concept make me excited? Why does it? Why doesn't it?**

The more you do this meditation, the more your excitement will grow, and your joy will be brought to life. On social media, (Instagram) I like to find/save breathtaking sunset pictures/videos of beaches and fields. To look at and reflect upon, when meditating on Heaven. I tell myself this is how Heaven will be, but EVEN better.

Visual reminders can help us in our reflections and with our meditating of scripture when thinking on Heaven. You may wish to try doing this as well, as you focus on your meditations. Various social media sites offer beautiful pictures/videos.

5. **Imagination: Ideas on meditating on Bible themes like Hell.** Read the Bible passages on Hell, reflecting and “mediating” upon those verses. While reading, imagine what Hell will be like. I’d encounter you to do this practice before bed, or first thing in the morning, or during the day in a quiet dark place.

If you think about **Hell** and those you love going there. And if you visualize in your mind (in graphic detail) about what the Bible says about Hell and imagine being there, you’ll fan your fear of this place. If you think about the worst memories in your life, the greatest hurts and reflect that Hell will be even worse, you’ll find your sources of motivation...for sharing Jesus. **(2 Corinthians 5:11)**

If you read scriptures about Heaven and Hell... and picture what you read in detail, these places will begin to become more and more alive. If you imagine yourself being there (Hell/Heaven) with those you love... then Hell and Heaven will become more real and the need to save others will become more strong.

6. **Thinking of Jesus’ sacrifice exercise. Read Bible verses about Jesus crucifixion and death.** One does not have to wait for Sunday to think about Jesus' death on the cross. Take time to imagine in vivid detail what you are reading of Christ’s sacrifice....of your Saviors suffering.

When reading about Jesus’ betrayal, of His friends forsaking Him, of our Lords mother weeping for her Son, of the floggings, the crown of thorns, and mocking, etc., imagine the experiences our Savior went through for you. Try to vividly picture what you read within the scriptures.... of Christs sacrifice for you.



Tell yourself while you're doing this, "*He did this out of love for me.*" If you feel unloved, unlovable, alone, you'll know this truth...You'll know that someone loved you, enough to value your life, to suffer and die for it. You are loved and you're never alone.

On Sunday's or when I'm doing this alone in my room, I think of those I love, that are saved, (my friends and family members). I know Jesus took my place and that of my saved loved ones. But for a time, I think about those I love being flogged, being beaten, hit in the face, mocked, and then crucified. I think about myself going through this as well.

Then I think about Jesus taking me and those I love down from the cross...to take our place. For that is what He did, we deserved to be punished for our sins, yet our Lord took these pains upon Himself. **(Isaiah 53:6)**

*I encourage you to do this exercise as I described it. I know it won't be easy. But it will help you connect with the scriptures and better emotionally understand the cost our Savior paid. This visual mediation (of remembering the Lord's death) helps me appreciate the sacrifice of Jesus more and value this gift more highly.*

We should have died for our sins. We should have been punished for our crimes against God. Yet His Son took our place. He did this while we were still separated from God, due to sin **(Isaiah 59:2)** and while we were still enemies of our Lord. **(Romans 5:6-10)** Our Savior purchased our great debt of sin, through His gift of death upon the cross. **(1 Peter 1:18-19)**

Isaiah 53:4 “Surely He took up our pain and bore our suffering, yet we considered Him punished by God, stricken by Him, and afflicted. 5 But He was pierced for our transgressions, He was crushed for our iniquities; the punishment that brought us peace was on Him, and by His wounds we are healed. 6 We all, like sheep, have gone astray, each of us has turned to our own way; and the Lord has laid on Him the iniquity of us all.”

**Appreciating the gift:** Thinking of God’s promise of Heavens reward and of our Saviors sacrifice, helps us embody the heart of **2 Corinthians 5:14**, When Paul says, “***Christ’s love compels us, for we are convinced that one died for all.***” When we can truly emotionally understand Heaven and the great cost of Jesus’ offering, we will have Chris’s love compel us to share this exiting news with others.



## Chapter 4: How to view a new convert

People are beautiful, not just in how the world see them, in the way of lust, desire, or attraction. Both males and females, boys, and girls, young and old, are beautiful, for this simple reason...they are loved by God. **(Romans 5:8)** And if He loved them enough to give His Son. **(John 3:16; 1 John 4:10)** Then they are pretty precious. And what is tenderly treasured by the Father and deeply valued should also be cherished by His children. **(Ephesians 5:1-2)**

God has placed within us gifts. **(Matthew 25:14–30)** Too many die and have their talents buried with them, never used, never known. You have been given such potential for the kingdom. If you are what the Bible says, in **1 Peter 2:9**, then you are *"a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, God's special possession..."*

You are thus bought with Jesus' death for a purpose. how does this Bible verse (above) end, in **1 Peter 2:9**? Why are you *"a chosen people...."*

***"that you may declare the praises of Him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light."***

You and I are chosen, royal, even a special nation unto ourselves, (like Israel of old - **Deuteronomy 14:2**). We are set apart, holy in God's eyes. We are His possession. We are a treasure owned and loved by our Father.

Why does **1 Peter 2:9** say we are rescued? Why, did God rescue us from the pit, and draw us out of the darkness into the bright marvelous light of day? **So that we can declare** Him, share Him, let people know about His glorious promises.

Can you imagine a carpenter who painstakingly creates a beautiful piece, something with a purpose, and hides it away? We were created for a purpose and God is not ashamed of us. He wants us to shine (**Matthew 5:14-16**) and to live full lives in sharing His Word.

No one should go through life and never live their purpose. No one should have their talents buried with them in the dirt. If we are to embrace who we are meant to be, we must live the purpose, work, "commission," that God has given us. (**Matthew 28:18-20**)

As the seasons of our lives change and we near our end in this life... no one should say, *"I never brought one person to Jesus."* No one should go to Heaven...alone. Legacy is leaving a mark. It is about saving souls from Hell and giving those souls hope.

## **New converts and mentorship.**

When it comes to salvation, remember it's the truth that brings the lost to Jesus, **(Roman 1:16/1 Corinthians 3:6-8)** and it's the truth that holds the new infant, in fellowship with the Father. Evangelism means we teach the lost and that we help the new converts grow. It's a process of mentorship, as we seek to nurture them in the Word of God.

Yet love is also foundational in joining them to a spiritual family of believers. **(1 Thessalonians 2:11/1 Thessalonians 5:14).**

The Apostles, John **(3 John 4)** and Paul **(1 Timothy 1:18/ 1 Corinthians 4:17)** called new converts their children. **(2 Corinthians 6:18)**. We see in these Holy Spirit inspired texts, the implication of familiarity. Those who are taught and those who did the teaching (can and should) have a bond that feels paternal.

Do parents give up on their children or undermine them? Do fathers or mothers look out for their own interests first or their sons and daughters? Spiritually speaking we need to look out for the welfare of new infants and do what parents do for their children, (we need to be mentors). We need to spiritually mentor them through our guidance, (in teaching and in example).

What is Bible salvation? Is it having someone come forward and do the things to die and join with Christ? Yes, but it is so much more. Bible salvation is also about helping the saved, to stay saved. We need to help them as they grow and as they walk in their new spiritual life. **(Romans 6:1-4)**

A good example of this can be found in Paul. This Apostle worked with young men, (like Silas, Titus, Onesimus) in mentorship and in evangelism. Paul spent time with Timothy taking him on missionary journeys and writing letters of guidance to him). This young man knew of Paul's life and teaching, because Paul *included* Timothy, in his life. **(2 Timothy 3:10-12)**

Teaching truth does not end with their conversion, that is when the learning really starts. Now you introduce them to the Word through your example. Now you lead and mentor them through your Christlike focused life. Now you have them integrated into the church's culture of Bible-based work and service.

We need to help the new converts grow up in the Word, (the milk of the Lord), as newborn babies, **(1 Peter 2:2)**. And not let them stay stagnate in a weakened state of infancy through a lack of training and teaching, **(Hebrews 5:11-14)**. The relationship is paternal. Paul called Titus, **(Titus 1:4)**, and Timothy **(1 Timothy 1:2)** his sons. He worked with them and taught these young men. Paul worked with and mentored Onesimus and calls this young man his son and *“his very heart.”* **(Philemon 1:10;12)**

This process of mentorship is a work of love, and a spiritual exercise of patience. We engage in mentorship and nurturing...as we help the new converts grow up into Christ.

Paul details this paternal concept (of his personal work and time investment) from the inspired text of **Galatians 4:19**, when he says, of those whom he brought to the Lord, that they are, *“My children, with whom I am again in labor until Christ is formed in you...”*

Paul was in spiritual labor figuratively speaking, in his work with these new Christians, to help them develop into the image of Jesus. The wording is intense in how this evangelist describes his mentorship with these young Christians. Paul talks more on the paternal nature he had with his new converts and of his desire to mentor them/help them grow. **(1 Corinthians 4:14-17)**

As Paul did, so, we too, should look at new members of the faith as people we can help raise up from infancy to spiritual adulthood. As you help them grow, remember evangelism does not stop at the baptism experience, that is where

the work truly begins. Before and after the conversion process, evangelism requires mentorship. It requires an investment of time and energy.

As a father teaches a child how to act through inclusion, examinership, and verbal guidance, we too should nurture God's spiritual children.

**(1 Thessalonians 2:7-8)**

**New converts as spiritual babies need to be protected and loved.**

**I already said this, but it is worth repeating. This concept is essential in applying in the process of evangelism:** *Truth brings the lost to Jesus and holds the new infant faithfully to the Lord, yet it is love that is foundational in joining them to a spiritual family of believers.*

We need to place ourselves in the lives of the new Christians. Remember this phrase, “discipleship is mentorship.” No new baby should be left to fend against the wolves, alone.

No new baby should be ignored and left to die. Yet when we do not work with the little infant, when we do not continue to teach and train the child, that is in fact what we are doing.

If you saw a baby alone in the woods on a cold night, crying and afraid, would you walk by? Would you let that child be torn apart by dogs or freeze to death in the cold darkness?

Would that not be the same as killing the child, through indifference? We must have the heart of Christ. We must show it in our lives, (through compassion) in how we treat **“the least of these,” (Matthew 25:40).**

**Let me share a personal story here...**

*When I was mowing the backyard on a sunny hot day in Tampa, (in the US state of FL.), I happened to disturb a nest of baby rabbits. They ran around in*

*terror, afraid of the lawnmower. On and on they ran till they were on the other side of the home, cowering against the wall of the house. I mistakenly assumed the baby rabbits would go back to the bush where their nest was.*

*The wall where the rabbits were huddling ...was next to my bedroom wall. Early in the morning (or very late at night), I heard high noted, screaming. I heard terror. The rabbits were too scared to leave that little area next to the wall...and without the protection of their home they were out in the open. An owl...or some other night predator had gotten to them. I will never forget those infantile screams.*

Too many times new converts are saved and are then left to fend for themselves. They have no new convert class at the church, they have no one interested in them enough...to spiritually work with them. Too many new babies in Christ are being left defenseless in the "dark night" to die...

Too many times people are converted and ignored. Instead, they should be grounded, (in Bible truth) included in church work and personal Bible activities. Brethren should share with new infants' Christian hospitality and treat these babies in Christ, with affectionate love.

They need to be encouraged to join events that can help them develop spiritually. Especially in evangelism, (since this is the greatest principle the kingdom culture ignores in this day and age).

If a baby is left alone in the wilderness of life, with little too no help and support that "little one" will most likely die. We need to be mentors. We need to include the new convert in our lives, to influence them in our Christian examples, to involve them in spiritual activities and to study with them in the core Bible concepts of the faith.

A mentor is a person who chooses to be a friend to a new convert. A mentor is someone who is there for them (spiritually). If the babe in Christ falls, they can have support, if they are struggling, they can have a listening ear, if they need



spiritual advice, they can have friends in the faith, who can give needed council.

Please know I am not saying we should harvest disciples to follow after us for our own sakes. I am saying, if we follow Christ, in God's (Bible based) teaching and in the Word's example, we can disciple others for Jesus. That is the point of the theme I am outlining.

As Paul said in **1 Corinthians 11:1** ***"Follow my example, as I follow the example of Christ."*** We should live among the new converts in a positive way, to influence them in their walk with the Lord.

Mentorship (for new converts) is a must in training, in exampleship, in friendship, in equipping them in spiritual acts of service, in helping them grow in God's truth and work.

***Remember the day you plant the seed is not the day you'll eat the fruit.***  
*Evangelism is a process. It's like parenting, a baby does not grow into an adult overnight, the maturing process takes time with nurturing and mentorship. When we work with new converts the process is the same.*

Even in soul saving, the planting and harvesting is done in their seasons. You don't plant seeds on Sunday and expect to be eating the fruits on Tuesday. Results take time. Evangelism, like in anything in life, is a process. But if you ***"fall in love with the process, the results will come."***

### ***Inclusion VS exclusion***

The Lord walked along the roads with His disciples. He ate with them and spent time alone with His followers. **(Mark 3:7; Mark 6:31-32; Luke 9:18).**

We can see from these passages that discipleship is about time investment. We need to be willing to look for spiritual opportunities to involve new converts in our lives.

There are so many ways to connect with new Christians, (you can show them hospitality, involving them in a Bible class, inviting them to join in a church worship role, have them visit the sick and elderly with you, invite them to an outreach event with you, involve them in a Christian group devotional/singing, etc.)

Saints need to make inclusion a part of their lives. This is mentorship. The more new converts are included in events and are used in spiritual roles, (inside and outside of the church) the more they will feel loved and feel like they are a part of the church and that “they belong.”

Inclusion is important for new converts. We just need to take the time to include them in spiritual aspects of our life. Inclusion will also help new Christians develop and mature as servants (of the Word) and as future leaders.

Inclusions matters at church. Working with new converts in mentorship makes a difference. Love should be at the forefront of a congregation, if it wishes to grow. I’ve been to churches where saints are on their cell phones, playing video games before worship, or focusing on other things, then the command of **Hebrew 10:24-25**, of *encouraging one another*.

Sitting like a lump on your phone before and after worship ignores a fundamental (Biblical) reason why saints are called to meet. We are together to exhort one another, in love. We can’t do that if we choose to be anti-social with those people, who are supposed to be our “family.”

-----

## How should we help?

**When I say we need to be helping a new convert, please understand I am not advocating the following...**

- *Giving new converts money and earthly gifts/things.*

- *Driving them around town each week, (when they do not have a car) for social recreation or for chores they need done. They can take the bus.*
- *Involving them in every little thing you do.*

**Basically, when you're doing anything regularly that has long term consequences of fostering codependency on you then your enabling bad habits.** You don't want to make them feel entitled or feel they are owed things or money.

By doing for someone what they can do for themselves, your creating this type of mental mentality. Examples: I have helped people go to doctors' offices and grocery stores, weekly. When I stopped they got angry. The new converts began to think they were owed such help.

Please don't misunderstand me. On occasion, if there is a **real need**, helping someone new in the faith is fine. But make sure it is something done rarely and with great need. Doing nice things too often can manufacture feelings of entitlement and **turn their interest away from spiritual things to secular in nature**. I've seen this happen; I have been warned by others who do evangelism of this problem happening.

*Remember you're here as a mentor to help them spiritually grow and develop. You're here as a mentor to support their heavenly goals and help protect them from Satan. Your not here as a mentor to give them worldly things and do worldly activities for them. If they need help with something, teach them or show them how to do a thing themselves. It may help to also teach self-reliant Bible lesson themes to reinforce the importance of industry, personal responsibility by highlighting Bible topics related to taking initiative.*

*We want to make new converts spiritually self-reliant and in general responsible as new brothers and sisters in the faith, we are showing them greater love and kindness than if we give them stuff and spend all week running errands for them.*

Remember people followed Jesus for the loaves and the fishes, **(John 6:10- 15;41-42;66)**. When Christ offered spiritual food (teachings) instead, they left Him. Make sure new converts are focused on the right things, (spiritual things). If you offer carnal gifts, they will focus on you for the wrong reasons.

Such (earthly) things can turn their perspective from the spiritual values to the values of this world. You can cause new converts to stop looking at you as a friend, teacher, and guide. They will instead begin to see you as a “meal ticket” if you’re not careful. ***Be careful...Wealth and the things (of this life) can choke out the Word. (Mark 4:19)*** As I have said before, I’ve lost new converts (as have other evangelists), due to having done the mistakes I have mentioned here.

### **Take steps and allow yourself to grow in mentorship.**

A process is about investing into an ideal, to get the desired result. No one asks one girl or guy out, on a date, and if receiving a "no," response, gives up... saying "dating does not work."

No one goes to college and expects a diploma the following day or week. No one goes to the gym once a year and expects to have the desired results before them in the mirror. Or goes on a diet and weights the next day expecting the weight loss goals to have been achieved. In all secular dreams and goals, we understand it takes time, work, and an investment of one’s life, for the results to come.

Yet in spiritual themes (in working with new converts) to many think a single action should bring about an instantaneous development.

A single prayer, Bible study, evangelism action, is not an investment in a spiritual process. Yet people expect instantaneous results and growth from the minimal time they have given to one single effort. Mentorship work takes time and patience. It takes consistent investment. *It’s a process.*

This can be applied to all evangelism activities, (besides working with new converts). People say, "I went door knocking for an hour" or "did campus work for an hour" on the eve of a Gospel Meeting and "no souls were saved." "No one came to the Gospel Meeting."

Sometimes lighting hits, but usually for results to come, a person has to invest into the process. Doing something once annually for 30 minutes or an hr., in any secular endeavor and expecting maximum results for minimum effort is unrealistic. Why should we think giving God our leftovers in giving Him just a little bit of our time and energy each year (in evangelism work) would be any different?

We should make the kingdom's work a top priority and put His house first, (above this world and its distractions). We should not give our Savior the leftovers in our interest, time, and energies. **(Matthew 6:33)**

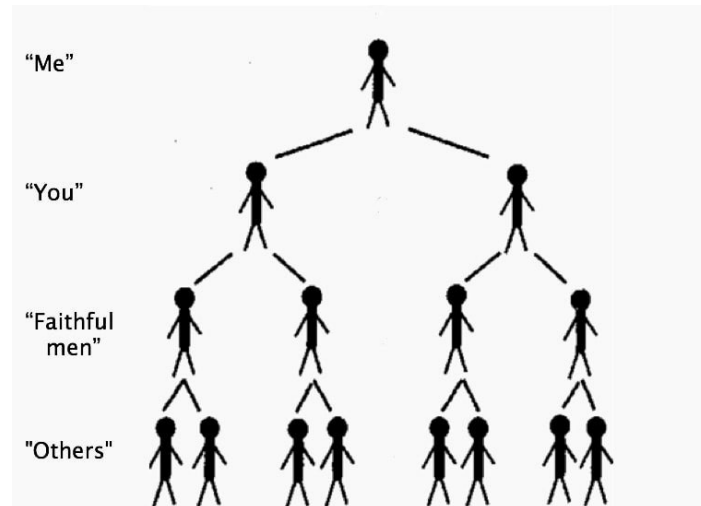
Love the process and the results will come. But be aware that God wants your full heart. He wants consistent faithfulness to His commands of sharing Jesus. God wants you to live His Word in your lifestyle. He wants you to choose to prioritize and invest in His kingdom with committed time and energy.

Our King asks for your devotion. **(Matthew 22:37)** Our Lord does not want a token deed done once a year to check off a box. Invest in God and He will invest in you. **(Matthew 25:14-30)**

No wall is built by a single stone and no dream is built by a single act. The Bible leader, Nehemiah is a good example of that. All architects build by one brick at a time, by one beam, one nail, one piece of wood.. They see the design and the end result. They engage in the process and invest in the vision they see. Let us do this for our spiritual monuments we wish to design within ourselves and with the world.

Remember: Evangelism is mentorship. Every "Paul" needs a "Timothy," and "Titus." The role of the Christian is to teach others and train those taught to teach others. Teaching is not just some vocal utterances given. Teaching is deeper than that. We teach through our words, through our example and through including others in our work and life. This is circular and should continue as a teaching process for the saints to ground, equip and mentor.

As 2 Timothy 2:2, says, *"And the things you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable people who will also be qualified to teach others..."*



### **Favoritism should never be part of the soul saving process.**

Non-Christians and new converts need our love, regardless of their age, their background, their skin color, their weight, etc. Love should not be conditional on the types of clothing they have on, or the amount of money they have. **(James 2:1-7)**

How poor a person is, or what past sins they have committed, etc. should make no difference on how we treat them. *Jesus saw the potential in others (He mentored) and they became better.*

*Jesus saw the potential in Simon who was a zealot, in Peter who was rash and impetuous, in Matthew who was a Roman tax collector, in Mary who was a prostitute, etc. He saw the promise and possibilities in others and sought to help them reach their spiritual potential. Our Lord is our exemplar. He **"is the way, the truth, and the life."** (John 14:6) His Bible example that we read about in scripture is what we are to follow.*

There are Christians who see a poor person, an individual with a tattoo, a person with health issues, etc. and are disgusted. These people don't see the value of these souls. They don't see their potential nor their inner worth. They don't see how precious they are in God's eyes. **(John 3:16)** They look skin deep instead of looking and seeing their souls value. We need to be like our heavenly Father and see people's value and inner potential.

**There is a quote that complements these thoughts.** *"If you treat an individual as he is, he will remain how he is. But if you treat him as if he were what he ought to be and could be, he will become what he ought to be and could be."*

— Johann Wolfgang von Goethe

How we treat someone can decide their fate. If we treat someone as inferior, with contempt and hostility, we will run these new converts away. If, however, we seek to work with the new converts and train them patiently through our words and example, we can encourage them to grow. Time and love will mold the new infants into the strong spiritual adults they are supposed to become.

God saw our potential enough to give us His son, Jesus. The cross was what our Lord did for us, He saw our potential. And died for you and me. We need to follow our Saviors example and look for the potential in others.

### **The example of Paul being given a second chance.**

God knew that Saul who was a murder of Christians, **(Acts 9:5/Philippians 3:6)** Yet our Father saw potential in this man, Saul, for God called him to follow the truth. **(Acts 9:5-6/Acts 9:15-16)**

This killer of Christians became the person we know today as Paul and "turned the world upside down" for our Christ. **(Acts 17:6)** Paul considered himself to have been, **"the chief of sinners"** and the **"least of the Apostles"** **(1 Timothy 1:15;**

**1 Corinthians 15:9)** due to his past. Yet despite what this individual did, God saw his potential.

### **The example of Barnabas seeing the good in others.**

Even Barnabas, (known as the son of encouragement) saw the potential in others.

**Example one:** Barnabas was part of the Jerusalem church, during Saul's persecution, (**Acts 7:59-60/8:1-3/9:1-3**). Yet after this man, later know as Paul had repented and became a child of God, (**Acts 22:16**) it was Barnabas who choose to see this man's potential, even when the disciples in Jerusalem were unwilling to meet with Paul and accept him. (**Acts 9:26-27**)

Barnabas helped open doors for Paul that allowed him to meet with the Christians in Jerusalem and with the church. Keep in mind, it was Paul who persecuted the church in Jerusalem and the saints within that city. As the passage shows in **Acts 8:3** ***"But going from house to house, he dragged off both men and women and put them in prison."***

It was Paul who helped stone Steven (**Acts 7:57-60/8:1**). This very same murdered brother was a well-known servant in the Jerusalem church, and was probably someone who Barnabas had known well, (since he was a part of that church). It was Paul who (not too long ago had) killed Christians in Jerusalem.

Yet despite this, Barnabas choose to believe in this man, enough to support him, even enough to join him in Paul's first missionary journey. (**Acts 13:1-4**) The Spirit knew what a blessing Barnabas was to Paul, and had Barnabas accompany him on this important missionary trip.

**Example Two:** Later on, when Barnabas' cousin, Mark (also known as John Mark) dropped the ball and abandoned Paul and Barnabas, during their first missionary trip. Though Mark had shown himself to be unreliable towards these men, Barnabas choose to believe in him and gave this brother in Christ, a second chance. Despite Barnabas having done the same for Paul, he still choose to



disagree with that decision. So, Paul and Barnabas respectfully parted ways. See context **(Acts 15.36-41)**

This decision of leaving his long-time coworker and supporter in evangelism, had to have been hard for Barnabas. But by leaving Paul and giving Mark a second chance Barnabas choose to see the potential his younger cousin had.

His action to leave bore fruit. It led to Barnabas and Mark (successfully) working hand in hand in doing the Lord's missionary work. Near the end of Paul's life when he was in prison, Mark is requested of Paul, in the letter of **2 Timothy 4:11**. Paul says, ***"Get Mark and bring him with you, because he is helpful to me in my ministry."*** Barnabas saw the potential in Mark and worked with him, to help this child of God, flourish as a Christian. And Mark became a dependable, hard worker in the kingdom.

Some of the best stories I have heard were of biker gangs, drug dealers, etc., coming to the Lord. When Christians don't view people as unworthy of hearing the gospel and they remove their prejudices, well... that's when God will do great things, (through them).

No new convert should be treated less in the body of Christ due to poverty, mental illness, poor hygiene, poor social skills, etc. These are the ***"least of these."*** If we try to show favoritism or desire His little ones to fall, (because "they are different") then it would have been better if we had died, then to have caused a little one to spiritually fall. **(Matthew 18:6-7)**

### **Personal story:**

*I studied with a young man in his early 20's, who had bipolar disorder. He wanted to be baptized. This young man lived in a government run home, due to his social and physical limitation. He was poor and could not afford a church tie. But wanted*

*to wear one for his big day. We went shopping together and I bought him one for that special occasion on Sunday, (when he would come forward).*

*When I approached the preacher and asked him to baptize this young man, the preacher refused. He later visited him at the government run home and told this young person to not come back to church.*

*Yes, this young man had social quirks, yes he had health issues that affected his life, but that was not grounds to do what this preacher did.*

*One of the churches elders and this same preacher, even told my evangelism team to “quit doing outreach in these (poor) neighborhoods. They said that these people are a burden to the church.” We were told to not convert these types of people.*

*Leaders in the churches should take the time to readily know the names of new converts. It’s embarrassing when an elder’s wife (from the same mentioned elder) after six months comes up to me and asks the names of the new converts. She’d know their names if she would bother to actually meet them.*

*Later when I left that church, this same preacher called up the (poor) new converts that he had not successfully run off and told them to not come back to church. The ones who he liked, (not poor, unhealthy, etc.) he left alone.*

Elitism has no place in the kingdom of God. Churches should seek to support new converts spiritually, (regardless, if they are healthy or sick, rich, or poor, black, or white, etc.)

Leaders need to get to know the infants they are charged with protecting. How we treat the **“least of these”** will be reckoned to us. How we treat them is viewed as how we treated the Lord, **(Matthew 25:40)**.

Kingdom building is not selective. Christ brought those who repented, the zealots, the prostitutes, the tax collectors, the infirm, the poor to God, **(Matthew 21:31-32)**. Our Lord was interested in folks, who repented and came to the truth, even if

they did not have a squeaky-clean past. He embraced what the elite Pharisees disdained and ignored. Should we not be any different?

Notice in the church you attend how folks are treated. If an upper-class couple comes in with nice clothes and 2.3 kids...and the couple has no social impediments, speaking with class and refinement...how many within the church, will go up to greet them? Will the leaders seek them out and get their names. Will they invite them for a meal?

Now, what if a person comes in who is newly saved. But this woman has a mental illness, she has old, ragged clothes on, because she is poor. Yet she loves Jesus Christ...and cares about the Word. Should she not be treated any differently in the Lord's church? All of God's infants in Christ, need to be treated with dignity and respect. Regardless of where they come from.

If you want the church to grow, support the work. ***The grass is not greener on the other side of the fence, it's greener, where you water it.*** Focus not on some other congregations' blessings, focus on what you need to do at your congregation to get it to grow. Favoritism hinders growth. Politics hinder growth. Zeal and the love of God promotes kingdom growth.

People tend to live out our expectations of them. How you treat a child in expectations tends to create certain behaviors. How you treat God's new children can create the same effect. If your attitude is shouting, "we don't want you here," then they very well may quit coming. If you make a new Christian feel dirty, unworthy, ashamed, because of their clothes, or their past, they may go back to the world.

In matters of growth, we need to see how the person could be a year from now, even to where they could be 5 years down the road. Dare to see their potential. Let us follow our Lord's example, and ***"Look beyond the outward appearance and look at the heart."*** (1 Samuel 16:7)

It's easy to have cliques. To only greet one's friends in church. I've been to assemblies where saints thought church was a social club. They chatted it up, with their buddies and close friends, while visitors were ignored. Church should not feel like high school. There should not be popular social cliques where groups mingle and ignore the "lesser" people. Church is about helping others spiritually. **(Hebrews 10:24-25)** Church is not a self-involved social party for one's ego and for one's self-interests.

Selfless agape love is about looking out for the spiritual needs of others, it's not in feeding our own social interests.

What does Jesus say in **Matthew 5:46** ***"If you love those who love you, what reward will you get? Are not even the tax collectors doing that? 47 And if you greet only your own people, what are you doing more than others? Do not even pagans do that?"***

Though the context of **Matthew 5** is talking about one's enemies, it also details "preferences" and "favoritism practices." When we are willing to love others for them, and *not for what we can get (emotionally, socially) in the exchange*, by just focusing on talking to our friends, then that's when we follow the New Testament type of love Christ exhorts of His servants. Let us have the heart of Jesus and follow His example. **(Matthew 20:28)**

Read the selfless sacrificial expression of love in the story of Jesus washing His disciples' feet in the Bible example of **John 13:1-17**

**Paul details the right mindset in the book of Philippians.**

*Let us strive to have the same attitude of Jesus.*

**Philippians 2:3** ***"Do nothing out of selfish ambition or vain conceit. Rather, in humility value others above yourselves, 4 not looking to your own interests but each of you to the interests of the others. 5 In your relationships with one another, have the same mindset as Christ Jesus."***

## Details of discipleship/being a mentor:

- *As in all aspects of the Christian life, a new convert/saints should be...shown love and hospitality, (to be invited into the lives of others). - 1 Peter 4:8-9*
- *Christians should work to Include new converts/saints into the body as workers, (inside and outside of the church). - Romans 12:3-8;11*
- *New converts should be included in the lives of the saints. Examples are powerful. Find ways to get them exposed to positive Christian examples within the church. You can do this by including them in spiritual activities and church work. Give them Bible based examples to emulate in life. - Titus 2:7; 1 Timothy 4:12*
- *New converts/saints need to be taught accountability in matters of outreach. They need to know that evangelism must be done, as part of the process of being faithful to God. They need to know that outreach is a duty that is as important as the Lord's Supper and church attendance. Because it is. This teaching to do soul saving work is a command. It is not a suggestion. They need to know that truth. - Jude 23; Matthew. 28:18-20; 2 Corinthians 5:11;14; 1 Peter 3:15*
- *Christians should gradually and lovingly encourage new converts/saints to do more and more for the Lord in matters of service, (especially in roles of outreach, like being at Bible studies, visiting new converts, doing an evangelism event, learning how to teach others, inviting friends to church, etc.) As new creations we were made to do good (Bible-based) works. - Ephesians 2:10 And as new creations we are called to share Jesus. - 1 Peter 2:9*
- *Discipleship does not end at baptism. The new converts need to be grounded in the Bible teachings of maturity. I recommend doing at least 1 Bible study a week for a year with a new convert, (best done in someone's home). Bible study is a must for growth and development. - 2 Peter 1:3-4; Hebrews 5:12-14; 2 Timothy 3:16-17*
- *We need to understand new converts are babes in the faith and be patient in working with them. They will take time to mature and learn the truths of the Word. We need to look out for their spiritual interests and be there for them. - Romans 15:1-5; 1 Thessalonians 5:14*

## **Lesson Thought Exercises:**

***A. How are we to view a new convert?***

***B. How did God see the potential in Paul?***

***C. What are ways of showing favoritism and social self interest in church?***

**D. Why “were we called out of darkness?”**

**E. How does John 13:1-17 apply to us?**

**F. Read in class James 2:1-7. Discuss in class this chapter and how we can avoid the pitfalls outlined in this Bible passage. Write down ideas.**

**G. Read in class Matthew 25:31-46. And let’s discuss this chapter. How can we show God’s love to the “least of these?” Brainstorm other ways you can make God’s little ones, the babies in Christ, feel loved, encouraged, and supported. Write these ideas down.**

**H. Think of ways** that you have shown social preferences towards friends above those who are spiritually struggling, including visitors, new converts, etc. Write them down. Think of ways to do better, write those ideas down.

**I. How do we** selflessly help those in spiritual need at church. Brainstorm and write down examples.



**J. Think of ways** to include your family in selfless service acts before church and afterwards, (opening door for new converts/visitors, passing out bulletin, etc.) Write them down here.

**K. Team building** exercise: think of ways to include new converts and visitors into your life. Try to implement one of those ideas each week. Try to get group members involved. Talk to members in this study group. See if you can get part of your study team to join you.

**L. *Think of*** those who are doing important church work. How can you help them? Write down ideas of those who could use team building support. If you are doing important church work, how can you include others in it?

**M. *For elders/leaders/preachers:*** is your church a place of elitism and favoritism? Or is it a welcoming, loving environment for the lost and new converts? Are you part of the problem or part of the solution? What things can be done to improve the church dynamic of the congregation, to make the church more welcoming and supportive for new converts and visitors? What things are being done that are making your congregation a supportive place?

## Applicational Lesson Exercise:

- N. *Seeing their potential:*** Try to see people's potential within your community and church. Consciously make this practice a choice. Try to not just see people for who they are at present, but to also look to the promise of who they can be.
- O. *What are the ways you can mentor others spiritually within the community.*** What are ways you can mentor fellow saints and the new converts within the kingdom? List detailed examples on separate sheet of paper. Focus on looking for opportunities each week. Try doing one thing on your list each week.
- P. *Write down (on a separate sheets of paper) your goals as a mentor, and detail ways to meet those goals. Be as specific as possible. Also, write down the desired end results of those goals, (for self and for others/church). Look at these sheets of paper often. Let this be a "vision board" of sorts to remind you of your mission aims in kingdom work.***



## Chapter 5: Raising up Future Evangelists and Leaders

*The concepts in this chapter deal with parental mentorship of families.*

To wives and husbands: For those who are parents, when you see your children or even your children's children put on His name, you know they have an inheritance that endures. This is your legacy of faith.

Statues fall, books turn to dust, nations, and peoples are forgotten through the passing of time. But a soul saved endures forever. To die knowing a legacy of faith will last after you are gone...from those who had found Christ through your parenting, is peace. This is joy. **(Proverbs 23:24)**

A Christians spiritual legacy endures like the stars of heaven, for ***“those who choose to live wise lives and who lead others to righteousness will be as the stars,”*** **(Daniel 12:3)**. Their wise (Bible based) deeds will not be forgotten by God, and they will live on through the passing of time. God never will forget their works through the ages as they shine throughout the millenniums.

We need to ensure a lasting spiritual legacy for our family. Let us ***“lead others to righteousness.”*** Let’s remember evangelism starts at home, (through discipline and training). **(Ephesians 6:4)**

As parents let’s encourage our children to seek higher things. Let’s teach the value and worth of such pursuits.

**Romans 2:7** *“To those who by persistence in doing good seek glory, honor, and immortality, He will give eternal life. 8 But for those who are self-seeking and who reject the truth and follow evil, there will be wrath and anger.”*

**Keep your family together in the faith:** We lose our young people in the Lord's church at a staggering rate. Most families lose their children to the world in their teenage years. Mormon families however tend to keep their young people rooted in their religious beliefs and practices. Why is this?

The Bible tells us to live our faith and to practice God's teachings. The Mormon parents have weekly devotionals. They eat together, they have game nights together, they study the Bible together, they pray together, they sing hymns together, they to church work together. The Mormon parents focus on fostering bonds that draw the children closer to the family unit and to their religious faith.

Mormons also choose to send their young people out to evangelize. They make that a priority. They train their young people to invest in their religion. They share with their children the importance of evangelism.

**Growing strong homes:** We need to understand the power of our example as role models. And work to train our families by how we live. We need to get our children invested in God's work, by creating weekly activities that are centered around His Word. We need to create lasting bonds with our kids. Bonds towards us, as parents, bonds towards the family unit and bonds towards God. We need to focus on activities that help foster such bonds.

**In matters of Bible instruction:** We need to train our children in all of God's commands, including the principles (and their applications) of evangelism. It's not enough to tell a children how to do a thing, we must get them out of the house and show them.

If you're doing a Bible study that is talking about service, you can implement an idea like having your child do something that helps another family member out. Or if someone at church is recovering from surgery you can have them help you cook a meal for that person (and bring it over to the house). You can have them help you pass out church bulletins on Sunday, etc. These are just some ways to get your child to apply a Bible theme. For any Bible topic you study, like hospitality, evangelism, hymnal singing, teaching, kind words, the Lord's supper, giving on Sunday, etc. you can find ways to help them apply what they are reading.

*Find ways to get your children involved with what you teach them from the Word. And they will become invested (emotionally and spiritually) in such work.*

When we follow the concepts mentioned above, we will raise strong children. Let us do what **Ephesians 6:4** says, ***"Fathers, do not provoke your children to wrath; instead, bring them up in the discipline and instruction of the Lord."***

We need to equip our children in all of the discipline and instruction of the Lord. Nothing causes growth like doing the Lord's work, in having to defend one's faith, in sharing Jesus.

When your children do this, they are investing a part of themselves into Jesus' Word. Your kids are putting an investment of themselves, (emotionally, physically, mentally, and spiritually), into His cause. What people tend to invest in, they tend to commit to. And the more they commit to a theme, ideal, or cause, (through activities) the *more committed they will become*.

## Breaking these concepts down:

1. **We must first teach consistently:** If you only taught your child about Jesus once a year for some special event every year until their adulthood, do you think your child would grow up loving Jesus? Do you think that person would have a deep, abiding faith and connection towards God? Do you believe that your grown-up son or daughter would live a life of conviction in following the Word, if such attention was given to their training? No. of course not. The amount you put into training is the amount of benefit you'll receive. Which would be very little. In marriage, in work, in hobbies, you get what you put into a pursuit. If you put in very little, you'll receive very little. In matters of training our children it is no different. We receive as much as we invest. So, we should invest often.

That's why the Bible says in **Deuteronomy 6:6** ***"These commandments that I give you today are to be on your hearts. 7 Impress them on your children. Talk about them when you sit at home and when you walk along the road, when you lie down and when you get up."***

2. **We need to consistently teach evangelism: Teaching evangelism in Bible study is essential. Parallel with teaching within a congregation:** Teaching evangelism needs to be done often. If it's going to take root. If you ignore any of the teachings of the Bible, that theme will fail to take root. I've seen God's people at church grow weak (spiritually) in His service of soul saving. They have become indifferent to their family and neighbors going to Hell.

The leaders give a lack of attention to consistent training in evangelism. And it shows in the culture of the congregation, by their lack of empathy and by their stagnant lifestyle of sharing the gospel. If a church only teaches evangelism once a year, treating such an activity, like it's some special event, like we do with a national holiday as with Christmas or

Easter, people are going to become apathetic due to the lack of attention given to Gods teachings/commands on this needed topic.

**How does a church apply to a child?** Now let's apply the same concept to our children. If we teach them about evangelism once every blue moon, do you think they will believe we truly value this topic? If this issue is ignored and brought out into the light of day, for a 30 minute lesson once a year, what impression do you think that makes on your family? Like in any training ideal we wish to ingrain within our offspring, it is through consistent reminders and applicational training that our children learn/process and embrace truth.

### **C. Besides teaching, Bible themes, we must also get them to act.**

What a person invests in determines how rooted and strong they become in a thing. Hearing Bible truths is one needed step, **(Deuteronomy 11:19)** but the next step is in getting your kids out there, to do the Bible things they've been taught. Including them in church work or other spiritual work is foundational in training your family.

**Examples of getting your children invested in Bible based works:** Mentor your children, get them to dive into the Word, to teach your family a lesson, or to help in a little child's Bible class at church, etc. Get them out there to go door-knocking with you and your church friends. Get the kids together to do a Bible activity in sharing Jesus. Other things can be focused on in matters of doing spiritual works. You can do things like visiting the elderly at church, writing cards to the discouraged at church, baking cookies for new members at a congregation, etc. You can have a Bible devotional at the beach or park. You can have hymnal singing together in the evening. Brainstorm to find ways to get your children involved in the



Lord's Word. *When you train, you're kids in Bible works, you are making future leaders, soul winners, and are helping them to solidify their faithful walk with God, (for a lifetime).*

**Parents:** You will find that your faith will grow with your children. As you water them, you'll water yourself, as you bring them sunlight, you'll catch God's rays too. When you help your children grow as a mentor you'll mentor and nurture your own soul. Training is not just found through speaking words from the Bible, it's also in the application of the Word. That is where the spiritual growth truly begins to take place. Teaching them is one thing, getting them to involved in what the Bible says takes the children to a place of growth.

As the Bible states in **James 1:22** ***"Do not merely listen to the word, and so deceive yourselves. Do what it says. 23 Anyone who listens to the word but does not do what it says is like someone who looks at his face in a mirror 24 and, after looking at himself, goes away and immediately forgets what he looks like. 25 But whoever looks intently into the perfect law that gives freedom and continues in it—not forgetting what they have heard but doing it—they will be blessed in what they do."***

**D. You also teach by your deeds:** Your *teachings matter*, but so does your *life*. How you live, will influence those who listen to your Bible instruction. Let your spiritual words be in sync with your daily habits and lifestyle practices.

This concept is what Paul highlights in **1 Timothy 4:16** ***"Watch your life and doctrine closely, persevere in them and you will save both yourself and your hearers."*** How you live, what you teach matters. If you persevere in Biblical living and teaching, you can save your hearers (your family).

We need to have our children mindfully doing events to strengthen their faith. Bible training is not a passive practice, it's an active work. Parents, words matter to your children, but your example matters even more. They are more likely to follow your deeds more than your words.

Training must be more than lip service for it to be effective. It must be a part of a family's life, in *reflective practice and application*. Get your kids to invest in active Bible service to cement their faith in the cause of Jesus Christ. This is the mark of training a child right. Correct training leads to better results. **(Proverbs 22:6)**

**E. My personal thoughts on child mentorship:** Seek to know a child and the child will come to know you. Seek to understand your offspring and their longings and you've won their allegiance for a lifetime. Learn their dreams and find ways to support their heart's deepest hope, and you've connected with them as one soul does to another.

Seek to build emotional bonds (with your family) through events, (camping, singing hymns, crafts, cooking, game night) and not through things, (gifts, money, video games, new items for recreation). And they will look back on the memories. And value bonds over items. It's these past events that they will remember, not the presents they got. If you want a close family, do the things that build rapport and intimacy.

Seek to love your children above all things, except your spouse and God and they will love you above all things, except their future mate and their Creator. Your actions are your testimony. Let your life shout, "I love you" each and every day. Let your heart say you're more important to me than my job, my friends, my hobbies, etc.

Don't be unforgiving or hateful to people (including your enemies) or you'll raise up children who will in like manner live in an unloving manner. The worst legacy a person can give a child (as that person matures into an adult) is by ingraining bad (emotional) habits into them. Children see examples and will pattern themselves after petty behavior. Love your parents and spend time with them, and when your children grow up, they will know the importance of family and will in like manner honor you when you are old. Our examples are our children's "teachers."

Knowing that...how you treat your wife/husband will create examples of what your children will look for. Abused children tend to marry an abuser, and alcoholic fathers tend to raise up daughters who marry alcoholics. You want your children to pick well. Teach them, while they are young, by the manner and example you give in how you treat your mate.

Examples are powerful. Talk, breathe, and live your faith. Include your children in your spiritual work. Include them in Bible studies, prayers, songs, and outreach activities, and you'll teach them to daily invest in God, in their actions, emotions, and mental energies. If you invest in them in this manner, they will invest in Him...for the long term.

I have heard parents say they don't have to do evangelism. That I am not showing them and others like them "grace" for telling saints they are supposed to save the lost. They make excuses like they have to work or be a parent. They quote scripture to justify these roles to try to edge out of this responsibility of helping others from eternal torment. God's commandments are binding, universal and clear. Christians are expected to love and have compassion for the lost.

The New Testament Christians shared the good news. Even those who had jobs and families. Certain Apostles were married, and had children, (two where Jerusalem elders – James and Peter) and God's people worked for a living, as we do today.

The gospels and the book of Acts show this truth. The commands in the Bible tell us to try to save people from Hell. It's inexcusable when saints make excuses to not try to help people in such spiritual need. I have heard women say or imply they don't have to try to save the lost, because they are evangelizing their children.

That's well and good, to teach one's family, but we still should look beyond our four walls and our handful of family members to also try to share Jesus with the world. Christianity is about love and compassion. Let us be the lights in this world, that help lost, broken souls find hope.

The Great Commission tells us to go into the world and share the gospel. Not ignore the world. The worst thing a parent can do is to teach their children to be indifferent to the lost. And an example of being silent and apathic to those damned to Hell is an example that does just that.

**“A genuine leader is not a searcher for consensus but a molder of consensus.”**

**—Martin Luther King, Jr.**

## Lesson Thought Exercises:

**A. *Why*** is it important to be teaching children regularly Bible truths, (including evangelism)? Write these ideas down.

**B. *Why should we get our children involved*** in spiritual activities? How can they benefit from us doing this. Write down your thoughts and ideas.

**C. *What things can you do to better can ensure your children grow up as Christians? Write down your thoughts.***

---

## **Applicational Lesson Exercise:**

**D. *Brainstorm to find ways/activities to get your children involved in the Lords Word. Write them down here. Try to implement one of these ideas each week.***

**E. What are ways you can train your children to be strong Christians and to be evangelists? What are ways you can spiritually help your home.** Write down (on separate sheet of paper) your spiritual goals (to better help your home) for your family, (self, spouse, kids). Write down goals that will help your children grow up as strong Christians. Goals that will help your children become Bible oriented evangelists. Write down things you can do to support your spouse spiritually. I encourage you to do this together with your mate. Have him/her also write these things down on their own sheet of paper. Share your ideas and thoughts together. And feedback on how you can improve certain things your spouse feels he/she needs help in **Look at your sheet each week.** Focus on how you can meet your goals.

**F. I encourage you to have your children write down** (on a separate sheet of paper) their spiritual goals. These goals are things that you can help them with. You can also ask them for ideas on how they can include evangelism in their life. With your help, they can write down their ideas. They can also write down the steps they need to do to get to those goals. When they invest into Christian ideals with their minds, hearts, and actions, that investment tends to last. **Encourage your children to look at their goals each week and help them (weekly) find ways of meeting their goals.**



## Chapter 6: We were Born to Spiritually Reproduce

Kingdom work is sowing the seed. **(Luke 8:4–15)** This spiritual seed, is the Word of God. When the seed bears fruit, when planted in us, salvation is the result. **(1 Peter 1:23;25)**. To make more sons and daughters of the Father, we need to sow the seed. We need to spiritually reproduce.

This nature is in our spiritual DNA. Through the knowledge of Christ, **(2 Peter 1:3-4)** we have His promises, (Heaven, relationship with God, forgiveness, etc.) that are found within the Word. When we are aware (mentally) of this knowledge and we put it into practice, (by living it), we put on godliness. By acting like Christ, (who shared the gospel with the world), we put on His image and the divine nature.



When we are belong to God, His we embrace His will. **(1 John 2:3-6)** And the Fathers will is to have souls saved. **(2 Peter 3:9)** This is our truest calling as children of God. We are here (as spiritual sons and daughters) to make more people, through the truth, into the image of our heavenly Father. For that is why we were saved, why we have been ***“brought out of darkness into His wonderful light, to proclaim the glories of God.”*** **(2 Peter 2:9)** That is why we are saved. We are saved to serve our God and give Him glory. **(Revelation 1:5-6)** This is our meaning and our spiritual life purpose. **(Ecclesiastes 12:13)**

We cannot find true fulfillment in Jesus till we do what we were put on earth to do. Which is following the Bibles truth. And the Word tells us we must try to save people. We must love people enough to save them from Hell. **(Jude 23)**

The greatest need the world has is for us to make the lost into God's children. Our spiritual biology and role as the *saved is to save*. We are here to reproduce through sharing the seed, the Word of truth. We are here to share our Fathers message. We are here to bring about spiritual rebirth, through the ***“water and spirit,”*** **(John 3:5).**

A man and a woman find completeness in creating a physical family. In spiritual matters, we can only find completeness in creating a spiritual family. Both are centered around love, and both fill us up with purpose. Both require stewardship, work, time, and give emotional satisfaction.

Both roles are God-ordained. And are mutually symbiotic in the emotional bonding that comes from being a mentor. Let us follow the divine nature. Let us act like divine Jesus and share the truth. Let us follow the Fathers heavenly calling as sons and daughters of eternity. Let us love, just as God loves others. Let's share the gospel.

### **We must act for change to come.**

It is easy to remain quiet. Silence requires nothing. No emotion, no message, no action. Silence will not offend, it will not be called "hateful," "mean" or "intolerant." Silence will not create enemies, lies, and unfounded rumors. If you want to be liked by most people, get along, keep silent. **(Luke 6:26)**

It's not hard to do. Most people will do the same. But if you genuinely love others and care about people's welfare and their eternity, then you need to speak up. Share the gospel, warn of false teachings, rebuke sin, call evil, evil. Admonish, train, correct, that is how you truly show lasting love to others. Love helps people get to Heaven. Silence helps people remain lost. Sharing the gospel may hurt some people feelings, but if others value God's truth more than what this sinful world has to offer then they will listen. The most hateful thing we can do is remain silent, while those we know are going to Hell.

There is a Heaven, there is a Hell. Are you going to remain silent? Judgment is coming. Are you going to sit and do nothing?

**We grow to the amount we invest:** If you devote an hour to a specific area of growth, (like evangelism) for a day or for a year, you will grow according to the time invested. You will also impact others accordingly to the amount of time you set aside for such work. If in your lifetime, you invest a small amount in kingdom building work, then you will only change things in small degrees. However, if you sacrifice...your time and devote your heart and your dreams to kingdom building, (laboring for God for a lifetime), you may just play a part in changing the spiritual landscape of the world.

You will also grow, (internally) by the hours you invest into a spiritual goal. I know this to be true. A man or woman can grow in 5 years further than an "preacher" of 50 years if they make evangelism, a "magnificent obsession." I personally have found this to be true. I have surpassed people (in a short amount of time) in secular and spiritual skillsets by making a specific goal my

main focus and investment in time/energy. Ask yourself if you're willing to make God's kingdom of first importance. **(Matthew 6:33)**

How much a person is willing to do and is willing to become, is up to that person. I know a guy, (Jack Adams) who converted 100 people in one year. How did he do this? Jack did not do evangelism once a year, or every 6 months, or once a month, Jack looked for opportunities each week and daily acted upon those opportunities. Evangelism for Jack was a daily lifestyle practice. That is the New Testament pattern we read about from the gospels and from the book of Acts. We need to strive each week to share Jesus.

**Love calls us to act:** God calls us to live a life of love. This is part of the Christian walk. **(1 John 3:23-24)** How can we claim to love others, if we ignore their greatest spiritual need? (Heaven, forgiveness, relationship[ with God.]) We are supposed to love our neighbors as ourselves. **(Mark 12:30-31)** How can we claim to do this and not share Jesus with them.

If you knew you were Hell bound, separated from God, and imprisoned in guilt covered sin, and you knew what you needed to do, you'd do it. You'd love yourself enough to act. You'd do what you needed to do to deliver yourself from such pain. How can you claim to follow the command to love others as yourself, if you ignore their souls deepest need?

The story of the good Samaritan, **(Luke 10:25-37)** was about someone who showed mercy on another who was in physical need. The story details how a traveler helped someone who was hurt by the roadside. His mercy saved a life. And yet there is a greater form of mercy when it comes to showing love towards our spiritual neighbors, that Christ refers to in **Luke 10**. The greatest act of mercy we can give to a person is to give them mercy that can last for eternity.

In **Revelation 2:5** John writes, ***“Remember then how far you have fallen; repent and do the works you did at first. Otherwise, I will come to you and remove your lampstand from its place, unless you repent.”*** God used these words to warn the Ephesian church that if they did not repent then He would wipe them out as a church. (Lampstand in this context represents a church, see **Revelation 1:20**) This church would cease to exist. The same warning applies to the many local churches that have been called by God to fulfill the Great Commission...yet have forsaken God’s will.

-----

### **What Will Happen if the Church Continues to Ignore Evangelism?**

“The phrase “Lost Generation” was coined by Ernest Hemingway and was used to describe the generation of young soldiers who had fought bravely during World War I, but came back home and felt directionless, purposeless, and disoriented. However, it’s also a term that could be used to describe the Lord’s people within a church when evangelism is not a priority.

Without evangelism, the people (neglecting His commands) within a church become lost and purposeless. When saints don’t save others, they themselves feel afloat. They are neglecting the greatest calling a Christian has in living a life of love and compassion.

Many preachers and elders have this same empty feeling. They feel like they are missing something. When God’s will is neglected, then a person cannot truly live a complete life in Jesus’.

The call of saving souls from Hell and helping people find peace, (through forgiveness in Jesus), is meant for all. How can we claim to be people of the Bible when the Bible teaches for us to share the gospel, (and we do not)?

How can we call ourselves people of mercy, grace, and forgiveness, when we refuse to impart such truths into the lives of those we know?

*This world needs Jesus, and believe it or not, the world expects followers of Jesus to tell them about Him!* **Penn Jillette**, who makes up half of the famous magic duo Penn and Teller, is more than a famous magician. He's also a well-known atheist. As he was being interviewed one day, he talked about a moment when someone handed him a Bible. Instead of rejecting the Bible, he took it as a nice gesture from someone who was concerned about his life.

As he retold of this encounter during the interview, the journalists seemed shocked that he would accept such a gift. But Penn went on to say that it doesn't bother him when someone shares their faith or talks about their God to him. *"What does bother me," Penn said, "is when people claim to know Jesus and love Jesus, and yet, they don't care enough to tell me about him."*

He concluded that interview by asking one of the most powerful questions I've ever heard asked. He said, *"How much do you have to hate someone to believe that everlasting life is possible and not tell them that?"*

Chuck Lawless said: "So much is at stake here. Millions in North America do not know Jesus. More than 1.6 billion people around the globe have likely never heard of Jesus. Generation after generation of children and young people are following false religions, deceived by an Enemy who wants to keep them in bondage. Families—even Christian families—are falling apart around us.

Meanwhile, thousands of churches go through the motions Sunday after Sunday, making little eternal difference. Since 1960, we have reached no more today than we did then. We can only wonder if Satan would say to us what the demon said to the sons of Sceva in **Acts 19:15**, **"Jesus I know, and Paul I recognize — but who are you?"**

Don't forget what Jesus told His followers in **Matthew 5:13-15**:

***“You are the salt of the earth. But if the salt should lose its taste, how can it be made salty again? It’s no longer good for anything but to be thrown out and trampled under people’s feet. You are the light of the world. A city situated on a hill cannot be hidden. No one lights a lamp and puts it under a basket, but rather on a lampstand, and it gives light for all who are in the house.”***

Our evangelistic pulse is faint, and yet God’s word is clear. We are called to be salt. We are called to be light. And if we fail to do what God created us to do, if we fail to be who God created us to be, we will become ineffective, ***“no longer good for anything but to be thrown out and trampled under people’s feet.”***

That’s not what God wants for you and me; it’s not what He wants for His church. He wants us to repent if we have reason to repent. His desire is for us to prioritize the things He’s commissioned us to do, and to pursue Him as we’ve never pursued Him before.

*“What Will Happen if the Church Continues to Ignore Evangelism?” is from the article of Jordan Easley and Ernest Easley. Source: <https://research.lifeway.com/2020/02/25/what-will-happen-if-the-church-continues-to-ignore-evangelism>*

---

## Lesson Thought Exercises:

A. *What is the spiritual seed mentioned in **1 Peter 1:23;25**?*

B. *Why were we saved? What does **2 Peter 2:9** say?*

C. *How are we to spiritually reproduce to bring about a new birth?*

---

## Applicative Lesson Exercise:

***Do exercise D. E. F. together with family.***

- D. Write down** reasons and ideas you feel, why the kingdom is largely indifferent to sharing the gospel. What excuses have you heard used? What excuses have you used? This question is a great one to include your spouse/kids in, if they are interested and willing. Talk with your family. Let everyone share their struggles in this matter. And ask for their feedback on how they can overcome their struggles. Encourage comments, thoughts, and brainstorming. This exercise can be bonding and as well motivating.



- E. Write down** the benefits of sharing Jesus. How can evangelism make a difference with the lives of others? Write down your ideas here. This exercise complements **exercise D**. And is great for including ones family in. These exercises can inspire and get people to thinking. You can ask for your spouse/kids to share their ideas on how evangelism can benefit others. Encourage group discussions, brainstorming and feedback.

**F. *How can*** we help change kingdom culture in regard to evangelism apathy? Write down ideas here. Share these thoughts with your spouse and kids. Encourage them to share their thoughts with you. These exercises may require brainstorming and thoughtful silences when coming up with answers. Yet by doing this work, you will find it helpful in getting you and your family to dig deep and reflect on these important concepts.



## Chapter 7: The storyline of Jesus

Jesus prepared His disciples for the Great Commission. But how did He do this? Let's look at the story of our Lord. What did He do to begin His evangelism ministry?

Our Lord first sought people to teach, mentor as His disciples. This teaching included evangelism training. In this context: I am going to go step by step into the Bible's narrative of the life of Christ. I will show from scripture how our Lord discipled others. From these points we can learn how to mentor people.

### **How did our Lord make disciples? Jesus first actively sought after the lost:**

Jesus made evangelism a part of His daily life. Our Lord searched for people to save and afterward He further discipled and mentored those people...in the Word. While by Galilee, Christ called Peter, James, and John. **(Luke 5:1- 11)** When Jesus was walking throughout Israel, He called Matthew the tax collector to follow Him. **(Matthew 9:9)**

Our Lord regularly called people and mentored/discipled them. The call of Jesus, is found in this passage in **John 15: 16**. When talking to His disciples, Christ says, ***“You did not choose me, but I chose you and appointed you so that you might go and bear fruit—fruit that will last—and so that whatever you ask in my name the Father will give you.”***

What did Jesus do? He actively looked and found people. Those found were chosen, (though not all He chose and invited, responded to His call to ***“come follow Him”*** - **Luke 9:57-62/Mark 10:17-22**). Our Lord chose people...So that they could bear fruit... fruit that will last.

This is the goal of anyone who want to help mentor people into better followers of our Savior. We want to train them to bear fruit in kingdom work, and to make their work lasting in its effectiveness.

When Christ called His disciples He said, ***“follow me and I will MAKE you fishers of men.”*** (**Matthew 4:19**) How did Jesus make ***“fishers of men,”*** of those He had called? We’ll get into that below...

**Making fishers of men:** How did Christ plant the seed of truth in His follower’s hearts? Jesus spent time with His disciples in teaching them God’s message. (**Matthew 5:1-2**)

Jesus also taught the disciples through His example when our Lord lived, (worked), among them. When Jesus served the disciples, when He washed their feet, (as a sign of selflessness), He said... ***“I have given you an example, that you also should do just as I have done to you.”*** **John 13:15**

Christ actively showed the disciples His example and included them in His life.

**Such examples were shown...**

- When our Lord taught the crowds. (**Matthew 23:1-4**)
- When He prayed. (**Luke 11:1**)
- When Jesus did evangelism work. (**Matthew 4:18-23**)

Our Lord had the disciples with Him when He did such things for them to learn by watching His example. Christ told the disciples to likewise be leaders in how they live as examples, when He said...

***“You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden. Nor do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but on a stand, and it gives light to all in the house. In the same way, let your light shine before others, so that they may see your good works and give glory to your Father who is in heaven.” Matthew 5:14-16***

Our Lord taught His disciples and showed them how to live, through His example. He actively lived evangelism in His life. The disciples learned to live like Jesus. We are to do the same...as followers of Christ, in our Christian example.

*We are to be lights of the world and salt with flavor. We are to be people that influence others. Let us look for people to mentor. This can be from the lost world, but we can also help saints, better grow as disciples as well, (through our mentorship work). Look for willing people to help. Look for the young to influence. Look for new converts to train and support.*

Let us always ask the Lord of the harvest for help, and support, in this matter. Let's pray for laborers in His field.

As **Matthew 9:37-38** says... ***37 “Then He said to His disciples, “The harvest is plentiful, but the workers are few. 38 Ask the Lord of the harvest, therefore, to send out workers into His harvest field.”*** As we give God our prayers, let us go out and in faith and do our part in spreading the message.

**Jesus connects the purpose of His life to evangelism.**

Read **John 4:1-42**. While talking with (mentoring) the Samaritan woman about God's Word...What did Jesus say to His disciples in response, to food?

In **John 4** our Lord says in **verse 34** this... ***“My food is to do the will of Him who sent Me and to finish His work. 35 Do you not say, ‘There are still four months until the harvest’? I tell you, lift up your eyes and look at the fields, for they are ripe for harvest....”***

*We read within this passage that our Savior first teaches a lost soul, then tells His followers, (in response to them asking about food), that HIS FOOD is to do God's will. And what was Jesus doing at that time, when He was talking about doing God's will? Our Christ was doing evangelism.*

*In this passage, He compared the activity He was doing, in soul saving to being as spiritually needful as eating food is for meeting ones physical needs. Gods will, (in this context) was to share the truth. Christ viewed doing God's will as essential to His spiritual wellbeing, (as food is for the bodies wellbeing). See also Matthew 4:4 If we are to have the right attitude and mind frame, we too are supposed to view such work, as needful to us, as essential to us as our "meat and drink." The will of God is what we are supposed to (spiritual) live off of and find nourishment from. To our Lord doing God's will daily, (in seeking to reach the lost) was as spiritually vital to Him, as food/drink was for His physical nourishment.*

What did our Master Teacher say right after that statement, in **verse 35-38**? After declaring the great purpose, He had for doing God's will, in the work the disciples saw Him doing with the Samaritan woman. When this woman left and told her village (of the news Jesus gave to her) about Him being the Messiah. The people of the village came to Him. **(vs 27-30)**

When Christ looked and saw the crowds coming to Him, that this woman had brought Him, what does He say?. After mentioning (in **v 34**) the importance of doing the will of God, (in evangelism) In **John 4:35** Jesus saw the people and told His disciples **"open your eyes and look at the fields! They are ripe for harvest."**

Jesus taught His disciples (through His example with the Samaritan women) and through His verbal Bible teaching with the crowd. Through these activities He showed the disciples how they are to actively teach others. His attitude also showed the disciples the importance of evangelism. That daily doing Gods will in reaching others, is as vital to our spirits growth as eating food daily is for our flesh.

Helping mentees cross bridges is important. Once a person has developed in evangelism work, they need to focus on passing the torch to future generations, through training people in this process of soul saving.

**In Jesus' life while working with His disciples our Lord also focused on giving His students a sense of accountability.**

Once the disciples had been shown the truth and had accompanied Jesus, (seeing the examples of Him doing outreach and other spiritual activities), Jesus encouraged them to go out and try doing these things themselves, **(Matthew 10:1-42; Luke 10:1-24)**. Our Lord encouraged accountability. Jesus even asks Peter to step up spiritually in following Him, after the resurrection, **(John 21:15-19)**.

**To be like Jesus:** Discipleship (for the Christian worker) is about fostering a sense of accountability in doing God's work. It is about encouraging new Christians to step up and do more for the Lord, as they grow and mature in the Word. *We read in the gospels that Jesus went from home to home, from town to town, to the synagogues and Jewish temple, and actively, regularly lived the Bible command to share the gospel with the lost. We read in the book of Acts that the disciples and inspired Apostles also were faithful to Gods command in sharing the good news with the lost. These men lived the Great Commission, in their daily walk with the Father, and practiced the teachings of truth, by following the example of our Savior Jesus Christ. This is essential. If we claim to have God, we must live as Jesus lived. (1 John 2:6) This is the New Testament pattern the leads to success in evangelism.*

**New Testament patterns to follow: This practice of accountability continued with His disciples.** Example: The Apostle Paul writes a command that encourages older ladies to step up and guide the younger women in the faith. **(Titus 2:3- 4)** The Apostle Paul also asked Timothy to be accountable as a guide to the older men and younger men in matters of the truth. **(Titus 2:2;6-8)**

We need to do outreach work and encourage the saints/new converts in this pursuit. We can invite them to join us in activities like non-Christian/other new convert Bible studies, or events like campus work or door knocking, etc. We can also do Bible lessons with the new Christians that further ground them in this (evangelism) sense of responsibility and duty.

**A good pattern for mentorship goes like this: *"I teach, you learn. I do, you watch. You do, I am there to help. You teach I am there for you, in support."***

We need to add to the growth of the Lord's people, through training others in the Word. We need to work with the new converts in Bible study for their growth and learning. As the scriptures say, ***"Give instruction to a wise man and he will be still wiser, teach a righteous man and he will increase his learning."***  
- Proverbs 9:9

---

***"Leaders must be close enough to relate to others, but far enough ahead to motivate them."***

— John C. Maxwell

---

**That in a nutshell is the mentorship process.  
Let us do as Jesus...**

- ***We need to be seeking opportunities to call/invite others.***
  - ***We need to try to bring others to the Lord as "disciples," (pupils/followers of Jesus).***
  - ***We need to train them through our words and by our examples.***
  - ***We need to create a sense of accounting in those we teach.***
  - ***We need to work with new Christians and help them in their new walk, (in learning and following God's truth). This is what discipling and mentorship means for us.***
- 

**Some excerpts from the book Master Plan of Evangelism by Robert Coleman**

*"John and Andrew were the first to be invited as Jesus left the scene of the great revival of the Baptist at Bethany beyond the Jordan (John 1:35–40). Andrew in turn brought his brother Peter (John 1:41–*



**42).** The next day Jesus found Philip on his way to Galilee, and Philip found Nathanael (**John 1:43–51**). Shortly afterward Matthew is called to follow the Master as Jesus passed through Capernaum (**Mark 2:13–14; Matt. 9:9; Luke 5:27–28**).

*As one might expect, these early efforts of soul winning had little or no immediate effect upon the religious life of his day, but that did not matter greatly. For as it turned out, these few early converts of the Lord were destined to become the leaders of his church that was to go with the gospel to the whole world, and from the standpoint of his ultimate purpose, the significance of their lives would be felt throughout eternity.”* **Source “Master Plan of Evangelism” by Robert Coleman Pg 21**

*“Our Lord focused on mentoring others. He choose a small group from which to do this from. Jesus “called his disciples, and he chose from them twelve, whom also he named apostles” (**Luke 6:13–17; see Mark 3:13–19**). It’s easier to train 12 people then 100 people. This was not about favorites; it was about impact. The larger the group of trainees, the harder it is to personally focus on each person.*

*Let’s be clear. Our Savior also focused on others. He had disciples who faithfully served Him, who were not part of the 12. The seventy (**Luke 10:1**). Yet even within the 12, Jesus focused chiefly on three disciples, James, John, and Peter. We can see there were three groups, the 72, the 12 and the 3. Each one took our Lord’s attention. Yet for the smaller groups, a more focused mentoring dynamic was allowed to take place. **Source “Master Plan of Evangelism” by Robert Coleman Pg 25***

*“Due to having a more personal mentoring interaction with the Lord, these men were with Him more than the others. Peter, James, and John had more one on one time with the Lord. They were the few who are invited into the sick room of Jairus’s daughter (**Mark 5:37; Luke 8:51**); they alone go up with the Master and behold his glory on the Mount of Transfiguration (**Mark 9:2; Matt. 17:1; Luke 9:28**); and amid the olive trees of Gethsemane casting their ominous shadows in the light of the full Passover moon, these members of the inner circle waited nearest to their Lord while he prayed (**Mark 14:33; Matt. 26:37**). The more concentrated the size of the group being taught, the greater the opportunity for effective instruction, (through example, spiritual instruction, evangelism training).*

**How the Lord called His disciples:** John and Andrew were invited to “come and see” the place where Jesus stayed (**John 1:39**). Nothing more was said. Yet what more needed to be said? At home with Jesus, they could talk things over and there in private see intimately into his nature and work. Philip was addressed in the same essential manner: “Follow me” (**John 1:43**). Evidently impressed by this simple approach, Philip invited Nathanael also to “come and see” the Master (**John 1:46**).

*One living sermon is worth a hundred explanations. Later when James, John, Peter, and Andrew were found mending their nets, Jesus used the same familiar words, “Come ye after me,” only this time adding the reason for it, “and I will make you fishers of men” (**Mark 1:17; see Matt. 4:19; Luke 5:10**).*

*Likewise, Matthew was called from the tax collector’s booth with the same invitation: “Follow me” (**Mark 2:14; Matt. 9:9; Luke 5:27**). See the tremendous strategy of it? By responding to this initial call, believers in effect enrolled themselves in the Master’s school where their understanding could be enlarged, and their faith established.”* **Source “Master Plan of Evangelism” by Robert Coleman Pg 38**

---

## Lesson Thought Exercises:

**A. *What thing did Jesus do first to start the process of gathering disciples to mentor? How can we do this same process in our own lives? Write as detailed an answer as you can.***

**B. *After Jesus sought others to mentor, what did He do next? How can we in like manner, as “Salt and light” do the same? How can we include others in our life to accomplish this goal of training? Be as detailed in your writing as you can.***

**C. *Once our Lord mentored*** others through His example and through instruction, He lastly did what?

**D. *How can we include*** those we train, (Christians, young saints, new converts, etc.) in our own evangelism work? How can we get these people ready for their own evangelism activities?

---

## Applicational Lesson Exercise:

**E. *Brainstorm ways*** you can mentor/train others in evangelism work. Write down ideas, people, places, ways, methods, support venues that you can use to help you accomplish this goal. Ask yourself who can you contact to mentor in evangelism? How can you get this process started? Write it down in your folder. Get a sheet of paper and do this exercise.

**F. *Seek someone*** to mentor in evangelism. Include them in your life. Show them your example in evangelism. Train them in Bible truths. Equip them to become evangelists. Show them how to do their own outreach events and soul saving activities. If your studying this book in a group, you can ask for team support. You can help each other reach this goal. If your studying this in a congregation, you can do the same thing, you can ask someone to team up with you to help you in accomplishing this goal. (Note: this type of work is a process. You may not be ready to train someone in evangelism yet, but as you read and reread this book and grow, focus on incorporating this specific lesson exercise into your Christian life and walk with God. The more you grow the more you'll become ready to do this work for Jesus and emulate our Savior and Guide. Know the next chapters will further help you in this pursuit).



## Chapter 8: “Leaders Who in Turn Make More Leaders.”

**Mentorship is Bible based discipleship.**

As the title shares, the goal of this chapter is to detail how we can mentor people effectively, in ways that lead to growth.

As covered in a previous lesson, discipleship in New Testament Greek is a word called *mathētēs* (μαθητής). This term means “one who engages in learning through instruction from another.” Other terms for disciple are “pupil” and “learner.” <https://biblehub.com/greek/3101.htm>

Jesus looked for opportunities (to disciple) in matters of evangelism. A key phrase I think of when I work with new Christians or possible future saints is this, **“discipleship is mentorship.”** It reminds me of the (spiritual) role I must play in the lives of those I interact with. As a mentor I must instruct others and give an example for emulation and guidance, (in matters of the truth).

The goal is to **not make carbon copies of our likeness and create disciples after ourselves**. As a follower of Christ, we want to emulate our Lord. When we teach and guide others in matters of truth, we can help the new converts pursue this worthy cause too.

Discipleship is simply shown in following the pattern of Jesus through adhering/promoting the Word. **John 8:31** ***“So He said to the Jews who had believed Him, “If you continue in My word, you are truly My disciples.”***

When we seek to save souls, we need to understand our responsibility is to make disciples, who follow *His words and His teachings*. We also need to understand that the work is fluid. The soul saving process does not begin or end with baptism. Discipling is teaching. And that begins before conversion and continues after a soul is baptized.

### **The Great Commission has stages in mentorship.**

In **Matthew 28:19** Jesus says, ***“Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age.”***

Notice in the passage, Jesus first says, to **“go” (Ephesians 6:15)**. We need to understand that evangelism is not passive, it is supposed to be active. Sitting around and waiting for opportunities, instead of making them is not the pattern we read about in the gospels or in the book of Acts. Sadly, too many Christians and churches have this “sit and wait” attitude.

Once God’s people **“go,”** the result of such consistent activity is what? Jesus says when we **“go”** these two words happen, we **“make disciples.”** The end result of an action, if done consistently and deliberately, (with a willingness to grow and learn from the process) *is a result*. That being, new disciples.

When we do evangelism that result *leads to making a disciple*. As mentioned earlier, a disciple is a pupil or student. When we engage in the discipling process we teach. People cannot believe, unless they are shown the truth. **(Romans 10:14-15)** And a true disciple, that is taught continues in Christ's words, to its soul saving conclusion. **(John 8:31)** This leads to baptism and the Christian life.

In **Matthew 28:19-20** the passage says, that after we (1.) **"go"** and (2) **"make disciples,"** (3) and are **"baptizing them,"** we still need to do another thing. The Great Commission passage says soul saving does not end with baptism, then we are to begin **"teaching them."** This whole process is about discipleship. The beginning and ending process of this work is about instruction and mentorship. It happens before a person is saved and it happens after a person is saved.

We need to know the conversion process does not end after they come to the Lord. We need to know that is when mentorship really begins.

After Jesus made disciples, He continued to work with them, (guiding them in truth and example). Christ expects us to do likewise. We need to share not just the gospel but our lives with those who heed its message. If we truly care about God's "little children," we will show it, in how we live our lives towards them.

As Paul says in **1 Thessalonians 2:8** ***"Having so fond an affection for you, we were well-pleased to impart to you not only the gospel of God but also our own lives, because you had become very dear to us."***

**To disciple others we must live as Christ. We need to learn to have a heart like our Lord had for others.**

A disciple spiritually means a "pupil" or "student," in connection to the Word. If we are His disciples in word and deed, we must be as the Lord is, as students following a teacher. **(Luke 6:40)** We need to teach this concept to those we mentor. This teaching concept must include training others to follow His spiritual examples of selflessness and of having a servants heart. **(John 13:10-17)**

Our Lord's life is to be summed up in sacrifice. From going to the world, to dying for the world, Jesus had one main intent to His life, that of freeing us from sin. Evangelism was part of that process.

The Bible says, in **Philippians 2:7**, that Christ **"emptied Himself"** and **"took the form of a servant."** This same chapter tells us in **verses 3-5** to have the same attitude and mindset. When we empty ourselves, we are in the process of learning to get rid of pride, fear, hate, self-ambition, envy, etc.

These roots thrive in the fertile soil of such sins as ego. When we learn to not dwell (inwardly) on self but instead to dwell (outwardly) on others, (as well as the Lord), we find that the inner ego begins to fade, and Christ begins to live more fully within us and our lives. **(Galatians 2:20)**

For our Lord, evangelism was not a once a year event, or a special activity done on some set time, for Jesus, soul saving was a part of His life. *It was His life.*

As we know within the gospels, Christ had His Apostles and disciples actively incorporate evangelism into their lives. These students of Jesus lived as He lived, (in doing soul saving work). If we claim to have fellowship with Christ, we also must ***"walk as Jesus did."*** **1 John 2:6**

**As mentors we need to understand our influence as leaders.**

You as an example, you are **"salt"** and **"light."** **(Matthew 5:13-16)** As a Christian you are placed in an influencing role. You are a leader (to your friends, family, church) by what you do and choose not to do.

If a church has no leadership, it dies. If no one steps up and leads in evangelism, the growth will cease. If no country has true leadership, the nation declines. If no community has leadership then that foundation will begin to crumble. If no family has leadership that house will fail. In this concept, everything rises and falls with leadership.



### **Bible examples of this concept of leadership.**

What if the Apostles choose to not lead? What if Christ choose to not make disciples and to go to the cross? Leadership matters. Spiritual leadership is a must. God sent His Son, and His Son followed His Fathers will. **(John 8:29)** Jesus was a leader and He in turn made leaders, who began the Great Commission.

The disciples were trained to lead, like Jesus led, in His example of “leading others” to the gospel. Jesus took the leadership role of teaching others. He led the unsaved, to salvation. **(Mark 16:20)**. This practice is what our Lord showed in His life, and this practice carried on from the first disciples and Apostles to the Lord’s people, in Acts. We can read of such examples during the early persecution of the saints **(Acts 8:4-6)**.

We need real leaders. Leaders who lead in evangelism. Leaders who know how to teach the lost, how to ground new converts. Leaders who know how to create evangelism events, and train groups in outreach methods, etc. Leaders who take a young person within the church or a new sister or brother, and work with them as a mentor. A leader can help a person grow in character, in spiritual skills, in church work, etc. We need such leaders.

Mentorship can be done through helping someone make the Lord’s supper bread, teaching young people the value of visiting the elderly at church, by making such an event for these saints to go to. Mentorship can be shown in guiding a new convert in church work. We can help them learn how to play a specific role within the worship service.

As I mentioned before, “Evangelism is mentorship.” The soul saving process does not end at baptism, we are to help them to be faithful. We need to continue to help them get to Heaven, (even after they are baptized).

***“Be faithful until death, and I will give you the crown of life.” Revelation 2:10***

The more we can interweave them into the kingdoms fabric, in the spiritual work they do (that requires emotional, mental, physical energy investments), the more they will be intertwined with God, His Word and His people.

Find ways to include new converts and church people in kingdom work. Seek ways to mentor others. All people can be mentored for the Lord's cause in kingdom building pursuits. Our young people can be molded into leaders. The new converts can be given training for growth. People of all ages and backgrounds can be mentored. Look for opportunities and think of things you can do for others in mentorship.

**The value of building a legacy of leadership. Leadership can rise and fall in future generations by what we do now.**

Bible examples: What do we read about Israel when they had a lack of spiritual vision in leadership?

In **Judges 2:7** we read what happens when there is a vacuum of leadership. When the godly leader Joshua and the elders lived, ***“The people served the Lord throughout the lifetime of Joshua and of the elders who outlived him and who had seen all the great things the Lord had done for Israel.”*** And yet after these men died... ***10 After that whole generation had been gathered to their ancestors, another generation grew up who knew neither the Lord nor what he had done for Israel. 11 Then the Israelites did evil in the eyes of the Lord and served the Baals. 12 They forsook the Lord...”***

*This leadership godly leadership kept things on a straight course while they lived. And yet they lacked vision. They did not create a lasting foundation. These faithful righteous leaders led. However, these men did not ensure generational integrity. They did not instruct their offspring/train them to be spiritual leaders, (through Bible instruction). The role of a great leader is not just in leading, but in creating a foundation for future generations, (through mentorship).*

Sadly, we read of this cycle of leadership within the Old Testament. Though the leadership of Joshua and the elders helped Israel stay faithful while the leaders lived, once these godly men died, so died their influence.

Creating a lasting spiritual legacy is to be found by first becoming a leader yourself and then developing those you mentor into leaders. The end goal is a church that thrives for years to come and does so – here’s the important part – with or without you. In my opinion this is the only logical way to build a spiritual team and a lasting legacy that impacts future generations.

There are two distinct types of leader: leaders of followers (in evangelism) and leaders of leaders (in evangelism). A leader of followers (in outreach) needs to be needed. That person is codependent and will not share Jesus without hand holding. Though that is a stage where we all initially begin at, we must grow and develop in Jesus Christ. We need support and guidance in our initial stages of development, when learning about evangelism, through training and infield interactions. Yet our beginning stage should not be our go to default state, when we mature, learn, and grow.

A good leader seeks to help those trained become self-reliant and personally responsible in doing soul saving work. As **John Maxell** quotes, **“A leader of followers needs to be needed, and a leader of leaders wants to be exceeded.”** *The goal of a mature Christian leader is to get to the point in evangelism, where the leader is not needed, by those he’s trained.* A mature leader will rejoice when his students spiritually grow up and in turn become self-reliant in outreach work. A good leader wants his trainees to become leaders. This should be his greatest joy when those he’s trained exceed him as they grow.

We are all followers of Jesus and the truth. What I mean by “follower,” in this context I’m talking about, is someone who remains codependent on others in evangelism work. Following the leader around, never stepping up and leading themselves is what I am referencing in this context of follower. We want those we train to develop past that point, (of codependency) in the long term.

If an evangelism event is not done, unless we do it, if souls are not being studied with, unless we set it up, etc. then we have followers. Our goal in the long term is to make our trainees into leaders. This takes time and patience, but that is what mentorship is. It is an investment. Its planting seeds and knowing in due season, fruit will come to harvest.

When a “leader of followers” goes on vacation, or gets sick, dies, moves, etc. their church takes a big hit. In contrast, the main goal of a person who has a “leader of leaders” mentality knows such work is not about having himself doing all the work or baptizing most of the contacts. The goal of a “leader of leaders” is empowerment. A good leader want to empower the students on the evangelism team to step up and begin *doing proactive work*.

When we develop we should, as we level up, be willing to lead in outreach work and studies. As we level up and grow we will be able to create an evangelism group. As time passes and a person develops, a leader should focus on creating his own group. Such a leader should be willing to build a team of “leaders of leaders” who will, (with time) be willing (as they too develop) to start growing their own teams.

A “leader of followers” doesn't do the work that develops other human beings, whereas it's the core (Bible patterning) principle of what a “leaders of leaders” does. We need to invest in those we mentor to develop their potential; shift how they look at the world (through Biblical training) and help them solve problems in evangelism matters. We need to be there for them in their spiritual struggles.

We need to work with them. Such work will help develop their thoughts, their habits, their daily practices, in matters of leadership and outreach. We work to increase their self-esteem, through helping them learn to do evangelism infield work and Bible studies. We recognize their dormant potential, and our job is facilitating the emergence of that potential.

A good leader makes leaders, and then (when they are ready) he lets them leave the nest. A good leader creates the foundation for which men and women can launch their own training groups (in study classes and infield events) in evangelism. *(And yes women can be leaders too. Obviously there are Biblical distinctions within the church and in teaching Christian men (Bible scripture) in an authoritative role in classes. But (in matters of Bible study) women can still teach the lost, they can still teach female saints, they can still train the young, etc.*

*They can still share ideas and methods on outreach, like door knocking, friendship evangelism, campus outreach, coffee shop evangelism, etc. They can do this through writing articles, books, making training videos, sharing tips on social media, and by teaching others, methodologies by word of mouth. Though if Bible teaching is also added as part of the training, more discretion should be used towards ones audience. Women can still put together a door knocking event for saints, or a street evangelism event, etc. The Bible does not tell women to sit idle. Both women and men are supposed promote His work. People who only want men to fulfill the Great Commission are a stumbling stone. I'm getting off point. But you get what I am saying).*

As we train others, remember to lovingly speak truth to the people you mentor. **(Ephesians 4:15)** Not everyone will follow through with the training process. Don't be afraid you're going to lose people. If they leave, they weren't the right ones. If they are the right ones, when you speak (Bible) truth into their lives, they will receive what you offer and grow from it. They might not initially like what you say. They might get aggravated. They might not be accustomed to people talking to them with such forthrightness, but if you speak from the heart, if you speak in a patient and nurturing way that pushes them to become more than who they are, they will trust and respect you.

**Making leaders of leaders:** Want to know if you have this leadership piece down? Do you want to know if you have “leaders of leaders” within your group? Ask yourself how your evangelism team is doing. Not how are you doing, but *how is your team doing? How would they do without you?* If the answer is they will do fine, even if I was not with them, then that’s when you know that you’ve made self-reliant leaders.

**In regard to your local congregation:** Without duplicating leadership, (within your church) you haven’t built to last. You have a church that is dependent on YOU. A long lasting congregation should not solely be dependent on you for evangelism. That strategy will fail. For such a platform is a structure not built on the New Testament framework. Neither Jesus, Paul, etc. focused on evangelism aside from mentorship. For the borders of the kingdom to expand, we need to focus on equipping others in evangelism. For churches to survive we must engage in mentorship work and soul saving training.

The church is called Christ’s bride. **(Ephesians 5:22-33)** yet in many places His bride has died. His churches in many states are gone. Some whole states no longer have one congregation left in them. Why is this happening? It’s because of a lack of leadership. More specifically, leadership in evangelism. Men and women are not mentoring others in soul saving work. People sit and complain about their church dying and still do nothing. You as a Christian are called to be a soul winner and a mentor. Leadership rises and falls in the churches, by people who choose to act (in doing evangelism) or who sit on the sidelines.

***“As a leader, it’s a major responsibility on your shoulders to practice the behavior you want others to follow.” — Himanshu Bhatia***

Jesus worked with the 12 Apostles and the 72 disciples. Our Master Teacher says of His pupils, ***“The student is not above the teacher, but everyone who is fully trained will be like their teacher.” Luke 6:40*** This is a mentor/mentee relationship. It entails training, and not just training but full training. Mentoring work is an investment. In reading the Gospels, we see that Jesus did not share a

little of His life in training His disciples. He made this work a large part of His life. We are supposed to be followers of Jesus... for He is the ***“Way, Truth, Life.”*** (John 14:6) Let us dare to invest in the process of mentorship.

Paul was also a person who actively did evangelism in his life. Paul, (like our Lord) was also a mentor. He worked with Timothy, Titus, Silas, etc. That is why the Apostle commands in **1 Corinthians 11:1** to ***“Follow my example. Even as I follow that of Christ.”*** This Apostle worked with the young men, Titus, Timothy. This relationship was paternal. Paul showed this attitude when he called these young men his sons in the faith. (**1 Timothy 1:2 Titus 1:4**)

The mentor relationship is shown in what Paul writes about Timothy in **1 Corinthians 4:17** ***“That is why I have sent you Timothy, my beloved and faithful child in the Lord. He will remind you of my way of life in Christ Jesus, which is exactly what I teach everywhere in every church.”***

Paul interacted with Timothy in mentoring him to such an extent, that this young man was able to instruct other saints on how to live by what Timothy saw in Paul’s (Bible based) life. That was truly a mentoring investment on Paul’s part.

Paul knows the power of example. By the Spirit this Apostle writes in **1 Timothy 4:16** to “his son in the faith,” Timothy to... ***Watch your life and doctrine closely. Persevere in them, because if you do, you will save both yourself and your hearers.”***

An example is worth a 1,000 words. A mentor does not just teach through verbal instruction, but also through examples. A deed can instruct as well as a word. A good mentor brings a mentee along with him/her in the spiritual activities that they do. In deeds of service, in deeds of soul saving, your life can instruct another by the examples that you give.

***“Leadership is practiced not so much in words as in attitude and in actions.”***

***- Harold S. Geneen.***

**Mentorship is legacy:** Those you teach will be impacted for a lifetime. They in turn can impact others. An inheritance leaves money in someone's checking account. Your legacy of faith leaves something in people's hearts and in their souls. Leaving a legacy is about you becoming the best possible spiritual version of yourself (as you grow in evangelism) and being that person day in and day out.

Legacy is about being an example for your family, and for those needing Jesus' message in this dark world. Legacy is about how you impact others (by example).

By becoming your best self, (evangelically) you become the type of person who can effect positive change on those you touch – people you work with directly in your downline, family members, people in your community. Your living and teaching (as a servant of God) a certain way of life that influences them.

Leaving a legacy (in evangelism work) is about living up to your full (spiritual) potential. Legacy is about mentoring others (through modeling) to live up to their full (Biblical) potential.

---

*"The effect of the work you have done doesn't stop there. For over ten years now both in my personal life and in my work, I have followed the principle of "seven generations of change," which I learned from a Native American elder. In short, the principle says: Our lives are impacted by the seven generations before us, and our lives will impact the next seven generations.*

*Our focus is on the latter. If I become my best self (as an evangelist as a role model) as a husband, father, mentor, leader, community member, and friend, this obviously has a positive effect on the type of life I live.*

*It affects my happiness, my overall sense of wellbeing, my contentment, my sense of purpose, my relationships. When I work to become my best (spiritual) self, I get the positive life experiences and emotions that go along with that.*



*It also touches my children because of what I model for them. They learn and model this behavior. And my children model for my grandchildren, who model for my great grandchildren, and so on.*

*This is the concept of seven generations of change, which helped me realize my life is so much bigger than just me. Considering seven generations also made things simpler for me, and it can make things simpler for you too. When we look at our decisions and the effects they will have seven generations down the road, the “right” decision becomes clear.*

*When we look at the hard things we need to do and realize that it’s not just going to affect us or our kids but the next seven generations, the hard things seem that much more worthwhile. It becomes natural to think more deeply and act more wisely about our choices and actions. We think more about what we say, how we spend our time, even what our thoughts are.”*

**Source: Book “Built to last” by Keith Callahan. Chapter 2 Pages 14-15**

---

## **Mentorship works when we have created a solid foundation.**

Evangelism is mentorship. Church culture can only thrive in evangelism when people are trained as teachers, as leaders, as workers, as event organizers...in outreach. This involves mentorship. A man can break a stick, even two, but a dozen sticks...are harder to break in half. A group of leaders endures longer than one saint who is carrying the whole load.

A church that has one person carrying the burden for all in outreach will falter when that individual who carries the burden stumbles, (moves, is sick, is on vacation, is out of town, is overwhelmed, etc.) A church leadership (elders, preacher, etc.) within a church that equips many through regular supportive training/mentorship (in evangelism) will foster church growth in the long term.

**Be alert for opportunities:** If you see a young college man with the potential to teach, use him. If you see an older woman with a warm caring heart, (in how she interacts with people), get her involved with the new converts. If you see a family given to hospitality, encourage them to open up their homes for Bible study. If you see an older person who wants to help with teaching a class, get him/her involved.

If you know of a brother who was getting events together in the past, ask "how can we support such future work?" If you see a young girl or boy that shows interest, (in outreach work) get them involved in evangelism, (with the parent's permission). The younger they start the more evangelism will become a part of their divine DNA in their adult lives. Young people are the easiest to mold. Never underestimate the ability you have to help such people grow. Many of them are looking for role models and for greater purpose in their lives.

*Here is a quote that fits with this theme: **"Leadership is not about the next election, it's about the next generation."** - Simon Sinek Network*

### **The power of mentorship/leadership.**

When mentorship is done...personal accountability is created, and proactive behavior becomes a part of the church dynamic. Mentorship if done to foster growth in others... will cause an evangelism attitude to trickle down into all aspects of the church. Mentorship is fundamental in getting people invested (in outreach) and in getting people growing/maturing...in His work.

Imparting Biblical-based truths as mere words will build a weak foundation. Imparting Bible-based truths as actions through discipling people into the ways of the Master, will build a sure foundation upon the Rock. **(Matthew 7:24-27)**

***"Leadership is the ability to guide others without force into a direction or decision that leaves them still feeling empowered and accomplished."***

**- Lisa Cash Hanson**

**The effectiveness of momentum.** Getting the boulder over the hill is getting your evangelism teach trained to the point that it starts to run away from you. When you train others as leaders (within the church) and they start building their own teams and creating their own outreach work, eventually your church will thrive without you.

Getting the boulder over the hill is when your evangelism team is working with you, in training your group. Getting the boulder over the hill is when your team is creating/leading events and heading up Bible studies. When this happens, you will be producing exponentially more (as a team) than you personally are producing, (by yourself). But you have to get that boulder over the hill, which takes massive imbalance and energy in the beginning. It's an investment in time to mentor others.

If anybody tells you that you can put in five hours a month (of mentorship) and the groups growth dynamic is just going to build and build, they're wrong.

Building to last doesn't work that way. You might experience small success that way, but if you want big success, you have to get that boulder over the hill, (in matters of mentorship training).

If you're in the process of getting the boulder over the hill and you stop for a few weeks, that boulder will roll back down the hill. People degrees in the early stages if ignored. And the longer you ignore your group, weeks, months, years, the more the new members will degrees. The longer you stop, the further down the hill the boulder rolls. If you're halfway up the hill and you stop doing the work for a few months or so, the boulder rolls all the way back down and you've got to start over again.

**Evangelism is not about ego.** Story: I once talked with an inexperienced evangelistic church leader who tried "doing Bible studies" but said he ran into dead ends. He did not accept advice from those he knew. I offered to help. I've added (by God's grace 25 souls to the kingdom in 5 years.) He declined. This church leader said he'll try instead try another church growth method, (to get conversions) I offered resources that would give him help and gave advice on what worked and what did not work. This leader got angry. And his new activities are once again leading to dead ends. Let me just say evangelism is not about ego, position or territory. A good evangelist is eager to learn, hungry for knowledge and is willing to take advice from other sources than himself and his circle of friends. Too many leaders would rather stumble around in the dark and spurn the trust of the church they are guiding in outreach, than take council from experienced veteran workers. Evangelism is about Christ; it's about helping His people grow. It's not about ego. It's not about us. Evangelism is about the cross. Our attitudes need to reflect that. God will send advice, people, events, resources to help new evangelists grow and develop, but we need to be willing to get ourselves and our egos out of the way. Our Father will answer prayers we give for such work, but we need to be willing to accept the gifts and guidance our Lord gives us.

## **Dynamics of leadership mentoring.**

**I break down my training hours into three categories:**

***1. Recruiting (looking for new people to mentor)***

***2. One-on-one mentoring of leaders***

***3. Group work with the team***

In this section we'll focus on working with your leaders. On specific days my sole focus is mentoring, one-on-one. I also randomly touch in on a daily basis with the leaders I'm developing. I send them texts and social media messages, and sometimes I'll just pick the phone up and call. That's the availability and commitment I make as a mentor. As a "mentor," I'm available one-on-one, not just in groups. I'm available via text, phone call, direct message. I'm available if people want to meet face-to-face.

**Special assignment:** I encourage you to make an honest *list of the time-consuming activities in your life that don't contribute to your future*. Commit to one year of imbalance. Give up those things and focus strictly on your growth in kingdom work. Please know I am not saying you can't watch TV or have hobbies. I am saying, if something is a deterrent to you as a Christian or is a distraction for you in matters of doing focused evangelism work, consider putting that item away. **Write such items down on your list here:**

When your 100 percent focused you will start seeing the results arrive more quickly, in personal development and growth. They don't come overnight. You have to hold strong and focus on "doing" before you start seeing the results.

You have to see it and believe it and know it before it actually happens. And you have to have patience. Then, it's about doing. It's about recruiting more and more people, (into evangelism training/work). Get that boulder over the hill until you have so many leaders in your group, so many new workers helping every month that (loosely speaking) it doesn't matter what you do.

Even if you stopped and decided to buy a ticket to travel to the moon...the group of leaders will be able to keep the group going. That's the power of you having a support system in place. The boulder is on the other side of the hill and the momentum from the leaders you've trained can keep the group going.

Your leaders and team are going to have a much larger impact than you because of the foundation you laid. The hardest part is getting the boulder going up the hill. Once that is done, and the process is set in motion, the preverbal boulder will be able to run downhill by itself. That is the *end goal* of leadership training in evangelism.

No matter where you are in evangelism, I want you to consider being a leader and working with others. You may not be there yet. But this is a long term aim everyone should be willing to focus on, once they have matured to that spiritual stage in their life.

## The cycle of mentorship.

Remember, **“Evangelism is mentorship.”** Every "Paul" needs a "Timothy," and "Titus." The role of the Christian is to teach others and train those taught to teach others. This is circular and should continue as a teaching process for the saints to Biblically ground, equip and mentor.

This (Bible based) idea (of mentorship) is important and is seldom shared in the churches. Yet this is what the Great Commission, outlines for the Christian walk.

**Matthew 28:19-20** calls us all to step up for Jesus. We are all called to act as leaders. To actively ***"go and make disciples," vs 19*** through training others in the truth. We are then to be... ***"baptizing them"*** in Jesus to save them, **vs 19**. After this we are to teach the newly saved to do the same, as **vs 20** states ***"teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."*** Teaching others is a leadership role that enables us to "lead others" to Christ through saving them. Then we teach the newly saved to do the same.

The mentorship cycle continues when we train new converts. For when we teach the newly saved, ***"everything I commanded you." vs 20*** we teach part of the overall doctrinal theme, to ***"go and make disciples."*** This is "Leaders making leaders."

This concept is shared by Paul to a young man, he mentored, named Timothy. The below passage shows a cycle of teaching and training that embodies mentorship. The Apostle, through inspiration, writes and says in **2 Timothy 2:2** ***"And the things you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable people who will also be qualified to teach others."***

The key phrase to imprint on one's mind, is **"Evangelism is mentorship."** In evangelism find ways to mentor people into teachers, workers, event coordinators, and leaders. The best way to ensure evangelism thrives in a church is by creating a "multi-head Hydra." If one (evangelism) leader gets sick, dies, moves, has to stop for personal reasons, falls away, etc. the other leaders can keep the torch going.

In regard to evangelism, encourage others to grow in this field, to use their imagination in generating new and creative ideas on outreach, to talk about ways of sharing the gospel. Encourage others to teach contacts/new converts in classes, to do outreach work, to create their own venues of evangelism projects. Encourage them to have *"evangelism journals"* to record their experiences, their spiritual ideas, and thoughts in the work they are doing. Innovation must be fostered in the church. Self-reliance and initiative in matters of evangelism must be supported, nurtured, and praised.

Such industry must be tenderly watered and given sunlight, through encouragement. Even those who are not interested (in evangelism) may become interested later on and choose to join in this work if they are given opportunities for inclusion and support. If a leader/Christian sees someone with a certain talent, they should use that person and take advantage of that talent. Don't wait for change to come to a church, unless you are willing to help cultivate it.

I teach my leaders that gaining momentum in this work is like surfing a big wave. In order to get out to the big wave, you have to go through the crashing surf. Once you get through the surf, the water is calm. Then the wave comes in and, if you get on top of that wave, you're riding that energy.

You're riding the momentum of that wave. Its momentum carries you forward. You're no longer crashing around in the surf and the work is not as hard because you are riding the power of the wave. It's the same with building up the kingdom. The surf is your fears, your insecurities, your self-doubt, the negative talk going through your mind. The surf is your lack of success and your lack of skills when

you're first getting started. We have to move through these struggles in order to get out to the wave. As we move through them one by one and start to see some small wins, we get closer to the wave, to the momentum.

If I wanted to build a legacy of faith that would last, I had to create the right thoughts and feelings behind my actions. It's not just about the actions. The actions are five percent. Ninety-five percent of enduring success is the mindset, the thoughts, the feelings behind the actions you're taking.

At some point in your church attendance, the clichés are not enough – “Be here a year from now” and “Just keep showing up.” If you want to become a leader, you have to move past just showing up and into molding yourself into the type of person capable of leading yourself and others in His soul saving work.

Leaders set one overarching, long-term goal as a mentor. Make it a long-term goal. Make it something that requires you to become a leader in His kingdom. After your goal is set, make sure all your daily activities are in line with that goal. If an effort is not driving you toward that one goal, but is sabotaging your spiritual work, don't do it. Don't chase the shiny objects.

**“Leadership is unlocking people's potential to become better.” – Bill Bradley.**

-----

### **Helping others branch out.**

When doing evangelism events create an environment through mentorship to support others in learning how to do their own evangelism events.

This can best be done through working with those who have gone to your events. They see firsthand what you've been doing. You can show them the ropes when they are ready to branch out and try doing events themselves.



Those who show up to your events can (with time) as their comfort level and experience rises, be motivated, and encouraged (by you) to do events themselves.

Help them get started. And when they are setting up an event, you can show up to help them or accompany them as their putting on an event, so as to be a moral support.

The goal for us as mentors is to train new converts and fellow saints. We do this through exposing them to our evangelism “salt/light” examples.

We also do this by giving the new converts and church brethren Bible instruction, through guiding/equipping them in leadership teaching roles, as Paul did to those new converts he worked with.

Let us strive to echo (in our behavior) what Paul says, to the new saints, in **Romans 15:14** ***“I myself am convinced, my brothers and sisters, that you yourselves are full of goodness, filled with knowledge and competent to instruct one another.”***

Mentorship is about helping saints become filled with God’s Word and its **“goodness.”** We want to help Gods people grow in character and spiritual maturity. We can do this through filling them with the **“knowledge”** of the Word.

The final stage of teaching is to equip God’s people to in turn teach others. We need to train new converts/Christian saints to be **“competent to instruct.”**

## **Mentorship in “teaching others to teach.”**

A good mentor will train his students. Teachers should host classes on evangelism, (to train others on how to teach the lost and to equip people in outreach skills and methods). This format will create an evangelism culture, through mentorship, that supports and fosters the saints in growth.

### **Teaching methods:**

***When getting together an evangelism training class:*** To train people in outreach methods, simply have a class that focuses on the type of outreach method you want to share. You can get lesson materials on a specific evangelism style you want to teach, or you can create your own, that highlights different evangelism formats.

*I'll have helpful resources listed in this chapter that shares training books on methodology content. You can use such materials as an aide when designing class material or when ordering training content for your group. I'll also share links and other written content that can help you in getting methods together for training your students.*

**When training people to teach others as teachers:** I'll highlight my own personal teaching format. You may choose to add some of the parts of the format that you like. You may choose to add all the points within the format or seek another style for training students to teach. This is what I have (personally) found to be of the most help, when it comes to teaching students to teach.

**A.** *I first open the class with prayer. The teacher will ask for prayer requests. Prayer is powerful, it's part of the New Testament pattern and it bonds the students in the class. This is a great way to open up all classes, (class forums such as non-Christians and new convert classes). When people are mentioning what they want prayed for, the teacher can write down the prayer requests (before*

*praying). He can also ask someone else too (write down the prayer requests) and have them lead the prayer. Depending on the size of the group, having prayer requests can add a few minutes to 30 minutes to the class. This activity is optional: but recommended.*

**B.** *The teacher will go to each student seated around the table or circle of chairs and have each student read a section of the lesson book material, then the teacher will ask the student who read the content (or another student), a question in connection to what was just read.*

**C.** *When a verse(s) comes up during the reading of the content, the teacher will ask a student to read that passage. If it's more than one passage, the instructor will ask different students to read the various passages.*

**D.** *If questions in the lesson material come up, (like circle answers, fill in the blank, etc.), the teacher will ask the students for the answers. If there is a Bible passage connected (with one of the questions) the teacher will ask a student or the class as a whole, to turn to that passage and ask for the answer.*

**E.** *The teacher from time to time can ask the class if they have any questions or thoughts they want to share. Be generous with your praise, (when appropriate). Let the students feel valued for what they contribute to the class.*

**F.** *The goal is to keep the Bible study (not including prayer) no more than an hr. long. Of course, there are extenuating circumstances, like if a non-Christian wants to know more about the plan of salvation, etc. But this is a good rule of thumb. The goal of a teacher is to also encourage interaction.*

*The best way to be engaging and keep students' minds engaged is by asking questions and by involving the students. You can do this by generating feedback and social interaction. You can also get the students involved by asking them to pass out Bibles, lead a prayer, etc.) Get your students to invest in the study physically, (by doing things) emotionally,(by sharing their feelings) and mentally,*

*(by sharing their thoughts, comments, and Bible responses). Investment helps the students build bonds with the teacher/class and content.*

**G.** *In interacting with the students, be mindful and thoughtful of your responses. Complement the correct answers. Be tactful and respectful when answers are wrong. Let the students know you value what they say, by doing this you let them know that you value them.*

**H.** *Close the class with a prayer. (Optional)*

---

## **How to begin setting up evangelism outreach events.**

*When you have a group and have trained them in methods, ideas of outreach and Bible based themes of teaching others, then you can begin to do events. You can always start doing evangelism events, before training people in “how” to do an event. You can begin an event before preparing your group as teachers, but its best to get people ready in knowledge and applicational training work as teachers before one begins to do outreach work. Once your group is prepared, you simply have to get the ball rolling.*

*I like to text/email those who have joined the group. Initially when people are in a training class, I pass a clipboard that asks for the groups email and cell phone numbers. I will explain to the group why I’m asking for such info.*

*This contact info is useful for contacting the students when coordinating upcoming teaching classes, giving details on evangelism events, etc. I use the contact material to help keep the team members UpToDate on meet up spots, times, and dates, as well as news on contacts, study materials, evangelism work details they may need to know, etc.*

*Before an evangelism events begins, I use the contact information to let the group know where we will meet up and what we will be doing. I tend to send out a group message a few weeks in advance to give people a heads up on what will be happening.*

*I also, the day before, (the event) give more specifics on the upcoming event. And let folks know the get together is still on. Usually for an event, (door knocking, campus work, coffee shop evangelism, meeting up for a study, putting up a booth at a fair, festival, flea market, etc.) I text a spot for us to meet up and the details on what we'll be doing and what to bring. Events for my group tends to be about 1-3 hrs. Though it varies according to the activity.*

*Once the event is done, we tend to meet up afterwards at a fast food restaurant, to talk about the work we did, recharge, and enjoy comradeship. I believe in positive reinforcement and getting together as a team, to reward ourselves after doing good work, is a positive experience for the group. Its enjoyable to have some food/drinks after working hard outside.*

*We will go over specific methods in the resource section in this chapter. I will also have content on specific outreach formats detailed at the end of this book, as well as a detailed "Journal" and church growth template that can help with training ideas and event activities.*

---

### **Remember teaching others is a process. But it's worth the investment.**

Teaching is a vital process that helps God's people learn how to serve in outreach work. This process take time, resources, and energy, but by teaching others to be "leaders of leaders" you are creating a reoccurring process of growth and change within your church. I've found that its easiest to recruit people who are already in your circle of influence. You can recruit people who into helping you do outreach work by using the students in your evangelism (method) training class or teacher (training) class. These students are already showing an interest in such work.

For the mentioned classes, (method training and teacher training) be aware of your students growth. As you see them developing and as their comfort level increases, encourage them to step up, and help with evangelism events.

**Churches should encourage many branches of outreach work and many people to step up as leaders:** When there are multiple groups teaching evangelism concepts and doing evangelism work events, then that's when evangelism will more quickly take root in becoming part of the church's culture.

The cycle of evangelism growth in the culture of a church comes from creating leaders who in turn make more leaders. Mentoring others as teachers and as active workers in evangelism is a must for this to happen. The more out there in the church who are teaching evangelism classes, doing evangelism events as well as other group outreach member-oriented activities, the more evangelism will trickle into the church as part of the overall culture. This is most effective if the elders/preacher/leaders support such work.

If people are mentored and trained, evangelism will become a cornerstone of the churches culture. This is most effective when the church leaders (elders, preachers, etc.) are leading in this (cause) as well. In recruiting (college age) Christians for training and for getting contacts from young people in your area, make sure you know of the different dates for college breaks (Winter break, Fall break, etc.) when they will be out of town. You want to get activities together when they are in the area.

**How can elders and preachers help:** The elders can help by sharing evangelism materials, creating church Bible (evangelism training) classes. They help when they have a vision for church growth and coordinate the necessary elements to put that vision together. Elders can help by creating a united front by continually voicing the need of doing evangelism work, "as a church." When the preacher is present in outreach work and is willing to do Bible studies and is consistently, (at least once a month), writing articles, and giving sermons on evangelism...then that helps to acclimate the churches climate and culture for evangelism.

Reminders matter. The preacher plays a big role in reminding the church of the importance of doing soul saving work.

***“People ask the difference between a leader and a boss ... The leader works in the open, and the boss in covert. The leader leads, and the boss drives.”***

**- Theodore Roosevelt**

---

## **Value the message:**

One of the biggest obstacles to building up the kingdom is in not recognizing the “value” of what you have to offer. The opportunity you have can change lives, and people are looking for what you have to offer. Yes, on the surface, we know the gospel is important. But is it (deep down) so special, so sacred, so precious, that WE HAVE TO SHARE IT?

If we can be hesitant to approach friends, acquaintances, and strangers for fear of bothering them, we are holding ourselves back. If we don’t want to continue to follow up in talking with others (who seem interested), out of fear of pestering or pressuring, we are limiting the gospels chance of reaching them. If we feel like we’re always trying to “push” His message on other people, we are looking at soul saving in the wrong light.

We are looking at His message in the wrong paradigm. Let me ask you a question: Have you ever felt that way, when sharing Jesus? That your wasting someone’s time? Do you feel that way right now? Does sharing the gospel seem to be a “negative” thing?

**Assignment: Changing the paradigm.** *Write down/brainstorm all the positives you can think of in sharing the gospel message with someone. What good can come of it? Imagine in detail those good things happening. Write this down on a separate piece of paper and read it daily. Imagine in detail those positive things happening to others daily, as you read your list.*

*You may wish to add to this list over time, as you read and reread this. Do this project now. Begin making the list. When writing down your list, also add to this list these words, **“My message is a gift.”** Write this down as an affirmation. Read these words daily, dare to believe it. Dare to accept it. Dare to live it.*

Take the step of recognizing and embracing the value of the message you have. Recognize the impact this message can have on someone’s life. Recognize that people are literally dying each day and are going to Hell. Know that you have a cure for the worst disease in this world, sin. And that you can share this cure with others and give them healing.

People are hurting and want to be spiritually understood, heard, validated. People are looking for an opportunity, (for hope, meaning, peace, forgiveness, love – that is found in Jesus) but most Christians are caught up in worrying about what others think and miss the chance to help those in this world... who are in need of our love and compassion.

Kingdom work has the ability to save lives. What we offer (through Jesus) is a gift that can change somebody’s life dramatically. It happened for me. It has happened for so many people. And it has been happening for 1,000’s of years. Accepting the message of salvation is a proven way to take back one’s life! Take the step of sharing it as a gift – not as something you’re trying to sell. What if you start looking at your evangelism work that way? Instead of “I don’t want to bother them,” see it has a chance of helping them.

I don’t know if the people you reach are always going to want this message. They might make fun of you. They might ignore me. They might be turned off. Stop looking at it as a bad thing. Your giving people a chance an opportunity for a better life, in Christ.

Stop looking at the negative “what ifs” and start looking at this as what this message is, A GIFT. What if you start approaching others knowing you have that gift? What if you approached a person each day looking for every opportunity to



share this gift? See the difference? Can you make that shift right now? *The list you make and the reminders you get in reading that list will help. The affirmation will also help.* You have to understand the biggest obstacle to your success is you, it's you and your own limiting beliefs. Let them go. Part of receiving this gift is in sharing this gift with others. Our calling IS that simple.

---

## Training resources:

**How to implement training concepts:** *When it comes to teaching, the saying that "Knowledge is power," is true. But only if we act on what we learn. You are reading so far within this book... about creating events, doing Bible studies, etc. But this book would be too long and drawn out if I included all the detailed methods for such themes. I have made resources that give graphic instruction/specific details for implanting various training methods and evangelism activities. These themes can be found below.*

**A. For training a church/Bible study group/evangelism group/yourself in the themes of campus work, street evangelism, door knocking and cold approach/friendship evangelism.** *I have a training book that details these themes. The book is called, "[Making it Work, 3 Powerful Techniques on Evangelism](#)." This book will teach you how to create campaigns/evangelism events in the mentioned fields. Which concepts, you in turn can teach to others. The book is also good for training evangelism groups and churches. In matters of friendship evangelism, I also encourage you to look at **(G.)***

- B. I also have written a training book that has evangelism content that you may like to use in your class teaching. The material has good ideas/methods for students.** The free book is called "[\*Evangelism Thoughts\*](#)." *This book can be used to train oneself in teaching concepts and in applicational group study mentorship themes. Evangelism groups and churches can also use this book for training. My method on how to teach others to be teachers is further detailed in this material. (pg. 21-22)*
- C. The churches are dying. If you want some fire in your belly and motivation for evangelism,** I encourage you to read my book, "[\*Save a Church from Dying\*](#)." *You will also find (within this book) helpful ideas on church growth and learn more about the state of kingdom culture in America. This is a serious and sobering read. The material details statistics of decline within the kingdom and the attitudes that are leading to church death. But hope is also shared within these pages. The tide can turn.*
- D. I have put together a highly developed [training website](#) for my evangelism group that covers all the main evangelism training methods and teaching formats.** *An evangelism group could just do one outreach format and get results, but I wanted to cover a wider range of content in my online training website for my evangelism team. For outreach work such lesson curriculum and diverse methodologies is not required for success. I just wanted to focus on a wide range of content. When you look at this site you will see detailed/outlined ways of creating self-reliant evangelism students. This platform is worth studying. This site has ideas you may find useful for patterning your work after.*

E. I also have a document on evangelism strategies from successful evangelists from around the US country. These soul winners have been growing their congregations through the Bible based strategies that are within this file. The document is called the "[Journal](#)." *This content has church "game plans" for growth, with practical, detailed ideas outlined for you to follow. You can also teach your evangelism group these concepts or your church. All the sources for the data I shared are listed within this material.*

F. I have an online evangelism teaching [platform](#) that has training videos, a strategy page, church growth survey, a cyber evangelism tutorial, etc.

*I encourage you to explore this website. The pages have content that can help you grow in mentorship training. The website also has training evangelism books, Bible study lessons, and other written content. See these links to review the books and other written sources.*

- [www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/church-of-christ-evangelism---free-material-store-page.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/church-of-christ-evangelism---free-material-store-page.html)
- [www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-free-bible-study-lessons.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-free-bible-study-lessons.html)
- [www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/useful-evangelism-resources.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/useful-evangelism-resources.html)

G. I encourage you to get this book by Benjamin Lee, "[It's not Rocket Science](#)."

*This material teaches people how a person or church can create an evangelism "invite culture," through its curriculum. Benjamin Lee has been effectively growing the church where he is at through the Bible based format that he teaches.*

H. Besides these sources, I will outline a [church growth template](#) at the end of this book for your use. *The material can be found at the end of the last chapter of "Discipleship for King Jesus." This template can be used for church growth and the ideas can help you disciple others. I also have this content in a separate file [here](#), for you to access, print, use, teach.*

## Lesson Thought Exercises:

**A. Assignment:** *It's time to dream big and dream beautiful dreams for God. Set aside a few hours to create in your mind the life you want to live and the impact you want to leave, (in Christian service and in evangelism). Work through this exercise in a quiet place where you won't be interrupted. Write down your thoughts.*

**B. Action Step One:** *Make a list of the “leaders of leaders” you admire in your church or within the spiritual kingdom as a whole.*

**C. Action Step Two:** *Working with the above list, what do these people do differently than others as leaders? What type of people are they? How do they make other people feel? What spiritual skills do they possess that you admire?*

**D. Reading section:** *Finding your reasons for doing outreach. Find your “why” that motivates you and drives you. Find your “why” that inspires you to become better. In this context: Find your “why” for doing evangelism. Find your mini meanings on this great purpose for which you have been called.*

*Why do you want to soul save? Do you want to set a better example for your kids? Do you want to do evangelism to be a better example/spiritual support as husband/wife to your spouse? Are you wanting to do evangelism to grow your local congregation? Do you want to bring people together in this united cause, to help brethren develop in this mission? Are you wanting to save those who are dear to your heart?*

*Do you want to become a better leader for your home or church? Are you concerned about your influence (within your church) as a Christian, preacher, elder, in neglecting this command (to save)? Are you burdened with doubt that you’re not pleasing God, due to ignoring this Bible teaching (of sharing Jesus)? Do you want to share this news of Jesus’ gift, to let the world know about Heaven and Hell? Find your “whys.”*

***Brainstorm and write them down here. What are your “whys?” I am going to give you plenty of room to write down your answers. Be as detailed as you can be. Think of as many answers as you can. Especially the ones that are near and dear to your heart.***

**Reading section:** *One of the ultimate reasons of “why” is found, in the concept of “leaving a Legacy.” If you’re a true leader of leaders (or that’s what you’re striving for), leaving a legacy eventually becomes one of your reasons for your “why.” It can become one of the reasons that fuels your drives in doing this work.*

*A soul winner will train people, who in turn will train people. This is part of the process of you making leaders of leaders. As you develop in this work and as you begin to see more of the great picture of providence in life, through following the evangelism calling, you’ll see that your “why” becomes bigger than you.*

*Your “why” is what you will leave behind. Leaving a spiritual legacy is about making life better (through evangelism instruction) for those who follow your Biblical guidance. It’s about showing people how to live better (spiritually through the Word) than they thought possible.*

*Leaving a legacy starts with you, touches those you directly influence, and eventually leads to generational change. Leaving a legacy has nothing to do with money. It has to do with “heart.” Find reasons that excites and motivates you and holds you accountable when you’re less motivated to do the daily work.*

*As you progress in the work of evangelism, your “why” reasons will mature and progress with you. As you start to accomplish your goals and see success, you’ll find more specific/detailed reasons for doing evangelism, begin to develop.*

**E. Think 5 years into the future.** Who have you become spiritually? What is your ideal self? What will your day-to-day activities look like? What will your spiritual relationships be like? What type of family will you have? Think of all aspects of your life and describe the most beautiful (evangelistic/spiritual) vision you can. **Brainstorm and write these things down.**



***F. Think about the generations who are going to follow you. What type of impact would you like to have on them? What do you want to leave in their hearts? What is YOUR LEGACY going to be? Write it out.***

**G. Reading Section:** *Most of us have a major misconception about personal development. We think personal development is something you just sit down and do. Like reading 10 pages a day. Listening to the podcast on your ride to work. This, however, is just information gathering, which is useless if we don't do anything with it. It's not personal development.*

**Personal development is the combination of those two words, (“Personal” + “Development”)** *You're developing yourself as a person, a process that involves understanding “who you are” right now and “who you need to be” in order to achieve your goals and dreams.*

*Most people fall short by focusing on “what are the activities that I have to do?” Leaders focus on “who is the person I need to become in order to be the Christian I can be for the kingdom and its work?”*

*Once you get clear on who you are and who you need to be, you can then look for the resources to close the gap. And here is the important part: you need to do more than study and learn; you need to implement. You need to become! It's not an information-gathering plan, it's a personal-development plan.*

*When I work on personal development with people I mentor, we find the areas in their life – in their character, their self-esteem, their leadership – where they want to grow. Then we find resources for those specific spots, and they work on improving. **Action Step One: What spiritual qualities do you want to grow in? Write them down on a separate sheet(s) of paper.***

**Action Step Two:** *On that same sheet(s) of paper, rate yourself on a scale of 1 to 10 for each of the qualities you're looking to grow into that you wrote down. Get a clear understanding of where you are today and where you want to be. You take the inventory so you can see the gap. Once you see the gap, you know where you need to improve. Your improvement plan covers the distance between where you currently are and where you want to be.*

**Action Step Three:** *How do you bridge that gap? It doesn't matter what you're willing to do. People are willing to do a lot. They're willing to sacrifice a lot. I'm sure you too have been willing to give a lot, do a lot, and sacrifice a lot. But the real question, "What's the piece that you're not willing to do?" Brainstorm and write your ideas down on your sheet(s) of paper.*

*When you figure out what's on your "I'm not willing to do that" list, you're well on your way to putting together your personal development plan in leadership work and evangelism service. If you want success at the highest level, you have to get your "I'm not willing to do that" list as close as possible to zero. It's always the place you don't want to go – the things you don't want to admit that you need to address. That you need to improve. That you need to work through.*

*That fear, that doubt, that insecurity, that depression, that "I'm not good enough" self-talk, that piece you've been carrying with you since childhood. Whatever that is, get clear about those places you don't want to go, those things you don't want to do, because that's where real change and growth occurs. Once you know what you need to start working on, finding the right resources to help you. Find people who have been there, who have done it before you. Model them.*

*What is it that they've done? How have they gone through it? How have they matured and grown into who they are today? You may find a mentor or a virtual mentor. You can gain support through the spiritual time you have with the preacher or with certain saints at church, or with goal oriented people in your evangelism group. Maybe it's someone online who can help you. It doesn't necessarily have to be someone you work with one-on-one, (in evangelism) although it can be. Your resources may be books, CDs, audiobooks, social media groups, videos on YouTube, audio sermons, digital Bible lessons, etc.*

*The best pattern of growth and emulation is found in the Lord. You can also find mentorship through spending time with God. Spend time with Him in prayer. Study Jesus' life and example, as you commune with God, in your devotionals, scripture reading, etc.*

---

## Applicational Lesson Exercise:

- H. Try to view a person that you look at when in church as a “potential mentee.” Try to practice looking at people with this perspective. Try to actively do this each week as you meet the brethren for worship. This visual paradigm will cause your behavior, attitude, perspective to slowly shift. This exercise will help create the right thought process for this work. This exercise is good prep work for preparing the mind/attitude for the beginning process of mentoring others.*
- I. At least once a week try to look at a non-Christian with the perspective that this person is a “potential soul to save.” Try to find time to do this weekly and slowly increase this action more and more. Aim to begin doing this daily. These reminders and perspective shifts will begin to change your attitude, empathy, interest and even your social charisma over time. This exercise will help you develop the right mindset for wanting to mentor the unsaved. This exercise is good prep work for preparing the mind/attitude before you start the process of doing soul saving work.*



## Chapter 9: The Value of Prayer (in evangelism work)

-----  
*(This chapter will be broken into parts)*  
-----

### ***Part One: The Importance of Prayer in Jesus' life.***

Evangelism and prayer go hand in hand. We read in the Bible that Jesus prayed for 40 days, (while fasting) before starting His ministry, (in teaching and in mentorship) **(Mathew 4:1-2;17-23)**

Our Lord found refreshment in prayer time with God. When preaching (in doing soul-saving evangelism work) our Lord “**...Frequently withdrew to the wilderness to pray.**” (Luke 5:16)

Jesus' new times (during the day) were not always convenient for finding strength in communion with the Father, so He'd get up, **"Early in the morning, while it was still dark... and slipped out to a solitary place to pray."** (Mark 1:35)

Our Savior prayed for major decisions and events. When Jesus went up the mountain to meet Elijah and Moses, He first prayed. **(Luke 9:28-36)**

For major decisions related to ministry, in appointing the 12 Apostles, (the very men who would lead the beginning work of the Great Commission), our Savior prayed. Our Lord invested a great deal of time in prayer. When praying about this decision, (of appointing Apostles) Jesus spent the night praying for God's guidance. **(Luke 6:12-13)**

When Jesus was heartbroken, He prayed. After hearing about the death of John the Baptist, our Lord withdrew (as He normally does for prayer), to a solitary place, **(Matthew 14:1-13)**, but large crowds followed Him. Jesus put His spiritual needs on hold, for those "He had compassion," for.

Instead of immediately meeting His spiritual needs, He met the spiritual needs of those who were following Him. Jesus began to teach, **(Mark 6:34)** help and heal this crowd of people. **(Matthew 14:13-21)**. Later after these multitudes had left, Jesus dismissed His disciples and went alone up to a mountainside. Late into the night He prayed. **(Matthew 14:22-23)** It was shortly after dawn, that Jesus finally returned to His disciples. **(Matthew 14:25)**

We read Jesus went up on a mountain late into the night to pray and at dawn went back to His disciples. There were certain times in our Savior's life, when prayer was an investment of time and energy. When we need refreshment, do we turn to prayer? When we are making big decisions or have a large event in our lives, do we pray for strength and guidance? When we are heart broken, do we turn to God for comfort, or to other things, (food, porn, TV, spending money, etc.)

Prayer and evangelism go hand in hand. This practice (of praying) helps you win battles with the Enemy when doing outreach, it opens doors, it helps you recharge your spirit and heals inner wounds you get in your battles. Prayer helps in the scattering of the seed and in the harvest. For the Lord is able to help us and bless us in our work. Prayer helps us grow closer to God spiritually and helps center us in the storm, when the work is the hardest. We need to make prayer an essential staple practice of our daily walk with God in living the Christian walk.

---

### **Lesson Thought Exercises:**

**A. *Do we have the dedication for communion/fellowship with God, that Daniel had? See example of the prophet Daniel. What did this man do when threatened to stop praying? How did he respond? (Daniel 6:1-28)***

**B. *Read the example of Nehemiah. What did this upright man do when he heard of Jerusalem's ruin/that the walls were torn down/that the people were disgraced? (Nehemiah 1:1-4/ Nehemiah 2:1-8)***

- C. Read the example** of King Hezekiah. What did this ruler do when he heard an enemy army was going to attack his city. What did Hezekiah do (in prayer) with a letter from the leader of that army? **-(2 Kings 19:14-20;35-36)**

-----

### **Applicational Lesson Exercise:**

- D. Assignment One:** Brainstorm what you do when you need refreshment, write these things down. How can you substitute some of these things with prayer? Apply what you have written down for your prayer life.



**E. Assignment Two:** *Brainstorm the decisions that are before you in life. The decisions of family, of faith, of work, of your spiritual goals, etc. Write your upcoming decisions down. How can you approach your future choices with prayer?*

**F. Assignment Three:** *Brainstorm future events that are coming up and write them down. Think of ways to incorporate prayer into your future plans.*

### **G. Reading section: Is prayer part of each chapter of your life?**

*We can see from the scriptures, that prayer was an essential part of Jesus' life. It was interwoven in everything He did. Our Lord found refreshment, healing, strength, guidance, comfort, support, and renewal in time alone with God. Prayer for Jesus was not a box to check on Sunday or just a time for a few words given before a meal.*

*At the beginning of His ministry, Jesus prayed. **(Mathew 4:1-2;17-23)** And at the end of it, at Gethsemane, (before being arrested), Jesus prayed. He instructed His disciples to also pray, **"so you don't fall into temptation."** **(Matthew 26:36-46)***

*We need to do as Jesus did and pray for guidance. We need to seek God in prayer to find strength in our trials. We need to ask for God's support when undergoing temptation.*

---

*"Prayer makes a godly man, and puts within him the mind of Christ, the mind of humility, of self-surrender, of service, of pity, and of prayer. If we really pray, we will become more like God, or else we will quit praying. Prayers outlive the lives of those who uttered them; outlive a generation, outlive an age, outlive a world."*  
*— E.M Bounds*

---



### ***Part Two: How should we pray?***

**A. Our Lord looked for places of solitude. Find a place to be alone:** *We know that in the work Jesus did, that He got tired. He frequently withdrew into the wilderness to pray, (Luke 5:16) Even our Lord needed time alone. I'd encourage you to stop and withdraw from the world for a while. Go deeper into your spirit. Find your "wilderness." It can be at a beach, forest, or park. It can be in your backyard, or in the morning walking through your neighborhood. You can go into your closet, or a quiet room in your house. I personally like getting up before the sun rises, early in the morning to walk. It's quiet, there's no people, there is a peace about everything. This is my hour of power, when I pray and charge up for the day. Find what fits your taste and personal interests.*

**B. Jesus often prayed out loud vocally. When you pray try speaking out loud.**

**You may find it helps you better express your heart:** *We read that Jesus spoke verbally to God. He did this when stressed and discouraged in gethsemane before His death on the cross. **(Matthew 26:36-46/Hebrews 5:7-9)** Jesus poured Himself out in prayer. He shared His heart with God.*

- *Shortly before going to that garden to be betrayed by Judas, we can read that Jesus prayed out loud. Jesus first prayed for Himself, for the past ministry of what He did. In that prayer Christ also mentions the upcoming event of what was to take place through the cross. During this time, the major decisions of our Lords life were verbally prayed about. **(John 17:1-5)***
- *Our Savior then verbally prayed for the 12 Apostles/the disciples. He asked for God to give them His protection, purification, and support. **(John 17-6-19)***
- *Finally, Jesus verbally prayed for all His future followers who were to come into the world. He prayed for the people to be united in God and in His love. **(John 17:20-26)***
- *These prayers reflected the Lords hopes, concerns, and goals. He prayed for those who were close to Him. He prayed for those He was concerned about. Prayer for Jesus was personal, intimate, and real. His prayer life was a communion between friends. Jesus' prayer life (in frequency and expression) was in direct relation to His spiritual relationship with His heavenly Father.*

*For us, we tend to talk more frequently and express our feelings (more readily) with those we consider close to us as friends. We tend to be more vocal and open in our communication with those we hold dear, (then we tend to do with other people, like strangers and enemies). Our prayer life towards God, should*

*be no different. We need to pray like Jesus. We need to talk to our Father as we would a close friend.*

***Why is praying out loud beneficial?*** *There are instances in the Bible of people praying in their minds, like that of Hannah, (1 Samuel 1:12-13). Of course, praying verbally is an option you can choose to do or not do. But for me I try to do this prayer format, when doing long prayers. I don't know about you, but it's hard to have a lengthy (30 minute and up) talk in my head. My mind tends to wonder.*

*I don't share myself emotionally, intuitively, naturally, thoughtfully, and as expressively in prayer, as I do when I give verbal communication. I encourage you to try both methods. Pray to God in your mind and pray to Him out loud. See what flows easier. Talking out loud may seem strange to you but if you give it a try and work with it, as with anything, the process will begin to flow.*

*For me I've found that, talking (to God) out loud as I do with my family and friends, makes the conversation move along. Talking about your stressors, and your mental problems out loud, (as Jesus did) is emotionally healing. I've found that this practice...tends to release the pent up emotional stress and helps the solutions to my problems...slowly work themselves out, in my mind.*

*Deep, long (one-way) conversations with God, are cathartic/therapeutic. Verbally talking to the Father out loud is easier for long conversations and communion with Him in prayer. I've found verbal prayer to be the most effective for me, when I have decisions to make, events to talk about. This type of prayer helps one to naturally open up, to talk about personal issues and struggles.*

*A good example of this is from the book of Daniel. Read the prophet Daniel's verbal prayer. His prayer was personal, intimate, heartfelt. (Daniel 9:2-19)*

*When I pray I'm pouring myself out. I share my hopes, dreams, fears, hurts, goals, regrets. I give my gratitude and praise (to God) when I am with Him in prayer, (for the good things/specific blessings I have received).*

*Praying like this is opening me up in a manner, that is bonding, intimate, and healing. This type of verbal dialogue (when discussing spiritual goals) helps my vision for His work become clearer. The spoken words seep into the heart, mind, and subconscious, making the plans more stronger, crystallized, and meaningful.*

*Prayer heals when we view it as a private space where we can be alone with God to share anything. This gives us venues to express ourselves (respectfully) on all levels. Prayer can be a time to vent and get things out of the heart. Prayer can be a time to reflect on what your life's work through the year, (spiritually speaking).*

*I use this time of prayer to talk about goals with God. I will try to go into detail. I will try to talk about the steps I'm going to take to meet those goals. This is my prayerful time for brainstorming.*

*But when I discuss my dreams, with the Father, I try to always tailor it around, "will this glorify God?" Everything I do I try to do it for a higher purpose than myself. By praying about my spiritual goals daily, my visions become more solid and detailed in my mind. My subconscious soaks up what I'm saying and thinking about and the default behaviors in my day-to-day life, become more naturally acclimated to the goals I have made.*

*If you understand your actions have the weight of eternity, then you cannot but choose a life of conviction over mediocrity. Prayer helps with this process.*

*Goals and dreams shared with God is a powerful thing. Paul prayed (and fasted) with the saints before beginning evangelism work in the first missionary journey. This evangelist knew the importance of prayer in doing the Lord's work. **(Acts 13:1-4)** Paul prayed about this goal and the serious work he was to do.*

*Praying to God during our struggle, with Satan is essential. **(James 4:7-10)** When the devil is tempting you, take time to call for aid. When you're fighting sin, pray for help. When life is hard, prayer draws us closer to our Maker. Such prayer is bonding and intimate. We should seek His face when facing personal issues.*

*I know some people have a vision board and do Journaling. What I like to do is to walk with God and talk out loud to Him. Talking out loud is more personal than in the mind. Communication flows more naturally and easily when it's verbal. I like to talk to Him (as I would my spouse or best friend). What do people who love each other intimately do? They share/talk about their hopes, dreams, goals, fears, problems, desires, emotional hurts/pains, likes, interests. They reflect on life and the gifts they have. They talk about things they value. If God is our best friend and is closer to us than our spouse, should we not do the same with our Maker, and heavenly Father?*

***This format of sharing hopes, dreams, fears, goals, is often recorded in the book of Psalms.** Examples: **Psalms 3** is of King David sharing his problems with his enemies. **Psalms 6** is of David asking for comfort, healing in (his emotional anguish).*

---

## Applicational Lesson Exercise:

**Assignment One:** I encourage you to read through the Psalms. *Find one where **hope** is shared in prayer, another where a **dream or goal** is talked about in prayer. Find a psalm where either **regret or fears** were mentioned. Find a psalm where **problems were expressed** in prayer. Find a psalm that shares a person's **desires, likes, or interests in prayer**. Find a psalm where **emotional hurt/pain** was shared in prayer. Find a psalm where **joy and praise** was given in prayer. Find a psalm where **thanksgiving and gratitude** was given in prayer. Write them down here.*



**Assignment Two:** Take time to pray in your head for 20 minutes and on another occasion out loud in a private place for 20 minutes. Try to share what's going on in your life, your concerns, fears, hopes, issues you're facing, etc. Talk to Him about work, family, your dreams, etc. Share whatever you want. Find what method suits you. Once you do, try to incorporate such (expressive/time/energy invested) spiritual talks with God weekly, into your life. Watch your life change, when you make this a habit. Watch yourself grow as you do this process more and more.



### ***Part Three: Spiritual Warfare and Prayer***

**The battles we must fight:** Prayer is as vital for the evangelistic Christian work as fuel is for the fire. For it is when we ask, we receive, when we seek, we find, and when we knock the door is open, **(Matthew 7:7)** These are all elements of prayer. What happens if we don't ask, seek (in prayer) or knock (asking God for doors to be open/avenues to be made ready for us to walk)?

What happens if we work for His cause and yet don't inquire of the Lord for guidance, **(Proverbs 16:9/ Proverbs 3:5-6)** and support **(Example - Esther 4:12-17)?**

What happens if we do His work but don't seek God's wisdom **(James 1:5-8)** in such undertakings. Does it not make sense to ask the **"Father of lights, who gives every good and perfect gift"** **(James 1:17)** for His aid in such spiritual endeavors?

Prayer is as needed for the human spirit as air. For our spiritual survival is a battle **(Eph 6:10-11)**. And prayer helps us in our wars with Hell.

We need to wrestle in prayer for ourselves, our family, our spiritual friends and for those within the faith. This includes our coworkers in evangelism. Prayer can help make slippery paths, dry and dark places bright.

Take the Bible example of Epaphras. Now, this man was a prayer warrior.

**Colossians 4:12** *“Epaphras, who is one of you and a servant of Christ Jesus, sends greetings. He is always wrestling in prayer for you, that you may stand firm in all the will of God, mature and fully assured.”* (Ephesians 6:18)

Are you wrestling in prayer? In our work for saving souls, should we not wrestle for each other in this matter?

Prayer opens doors, **(Luke 11:9)** wins battles, **(2 Chronicles 20:1-4;15)** and enhances the spirit within.

**The example of Paul:** When it comes to prayers ability to help the inner man, let's look at Paul. A few of the trouble making brethren in Corinth said this about Paul, **“For some say, ‘His letters are weighty and forceful, but in person he is unimpressive and his speaking amounts to nothing.”** **(2 Corinthians 10:10)**

Paul had an issue with timidity and that seems to have shown itself in his words. **(1 Corinthians 2:3)** Yet what did this man do through Jesus. He turned the world upside down. **(Acts 17:6)** Paul did 3 missionary journeys, planting churches as he traveled from place to place. This evangelist helped spread the gospel to the whole world, during the lifetime of the Apostles. **(Colossians 1:23)** Despite being shipped wrecked, stoned, and beaten. **(2 Corinthians 11:25)**

Paul even stood before Romes authorities in defense of the gospel. He preached to pagans, to people who wished him harm. Most of the recorded evangelism work, within the New Testament, (outside of the gospels) was done through Paul. Most of the church letters written by the Spirit (to new churches/converts) within

the New Testament was from Paul. Many of these letters, where written, even while this man was in prison.

How could a timid, inarticulate man do these things? The answer to that is through God. Paul's defense and support came by the *power of prayer*. This man knew of the importance of prayer. He wrote the converts (he saved through the grace of the gospel), this request.

**Ephesians 6:19** ***"Pray also for me, that whenever I open my mouth, words may be given me (Col 4:4) so that I will boldly make known the mystery of the gospel, 20 for which I am an ambassador in chains. (2 Tim 4:14-18) Pray that I may proclaim it fearlessly, as I should...."***

Paul continually wrestled in prayer. He asked for divine aid and asked others to help Him through their prayers. **(Romans 15:30-31)**. Paul asked (through prayer) for doors to be opened for him in ministry. **(Colossians 4:3)** We need to do as this servant of God did. This is an example of what a prayer warrior should be.

When we dare to believe that God can, it makes our faith stronger. And the more we dare to embrace this truth "that God is able" the stronger in spirit we will become.

**Prayer is about surrender:** Prayer is not just a hoped for end outcome, but it's a journey of growth, as one draws closer to God in communication and emotional connection. Even when we receive the answer "no" or "not yet" we grow. We mature as we learn to surrender more of our will to God's will. We develop through our struggles of prayer, as we wrestle with ourselves, with our will and with the enemies influence.

**Prayer about trust in God and resisting Hell:** The Devil's favorite word is "can't." Behind this attitude cultures have crumbled; congregations have died, and families have fallen apart.

When we face things with the view that the battle is ours, can't seems highly possible. But when we face things with the view that the wars before us are the Lord's, **(1 Samuel 17:47; 2 Chronicles 32:7)**, then we know we can overcome through Jesus.

Can't is the 4 letter word that will define us for our lifetime, (if we let it). Faith is what lies past our fears and self-erected walls. Replace "I can't" with "He can" and watch everything shift.

Remember the chapter of faith, **Hebrews 11**. It was **"by faith"** that Moses, Abel, Noah, Abraham, Rahab, etc. went out to achieve God's purpose in their lives. But they had to act. **(Hebrews 11:4-31)**

Stop saying I can't teach a Bible class, I can't mentor people in His work, I can't share the story of Christ, I can't be hospitable to a discouraged brother, I can't visit an elderly member from the church in the nursing home, etc.

Trust that you're here in this life to embrace a life of love. Know that you can do all things through Christ who strengthens you. Trust God, go out of your comfort zone, and watch yourself grow into the man or woman your Father wants you to be. Leaders give themselves permission to succeed. So many of us are waiting for permission to become the person we're capable of becoming in His kingdom.

Too many times we get in our own way. We believe the lies of the Enemy has, instead of the promises of God. He IS ABLE. Let Christ work through us, by letting the Word live in us.

Commit yourself to the process. **(Proverbs 3:5-6)** Allow yourself time to grow. Give yourself over to the work. Let each season bring its own change for your life. **(Ecclesiastes 3:11)** As you trust God, pray for the harvest and for the labor,

**(Matthew 9:38).** As you work you'll adapt, learn and progress as a soul winner. Anyone can win a soul if they just focus on the work and make this activity a part of their lives. Consistency wins. There is no such thing as the word "can't" when it comes to following the words of God.

**Remember fear is a liar. It holds us back.**

- **Romans 8:31** *"What, then, shall we say in response to these things? If God is for us, who can be against us? 32 He who did not spare His own Son, but gave Him up for us all—how will He not also, along with Him, graciously give us all things?"*

**Trusting God and prayer leads to peace and joy.**

- Let us pray as Paul shows us in **Philippians 4:4** ***"Rejoice in the Lord always. I will say it again: Rejoice! 5 Let your gentleness be evident to all. The Lord is near."*** (The passage in V 4-5 says we need to have faith build up, to the degree, that the coming of the Lord gives us a sense of joy. That this hope and knowledge of His coming, stirs us up towards inner comfort...which causes us to **"rejoice in the Lord."**)
- **6 "Do not be anxious about anything, but in every situation, by prayer and petition, with thanksgiving, present your requests to God. 7 And the peace of God, which transcends all understanding, will guard your hearts and your minds in Christ Jesus."** (The following passage in V 6-7 says we need to have such faith build up in our confidence in God's love, support, guidance, that we'll be able to pour out our fears, worries, discouragements, pains, etc. in prayerful surrender/giving these problems over to God. We need to trust our Father with our struggles and learn in faith to let our issues go. This practice leads to inner peace that protects our minds and hearts. Having trust in God is part of this process. - **Isaiah 26:3**)

---

## Applicational Lesson Exercise:

**Assignment One:** Find someone to wrestle for in prayer. Invest your heart and soul into their spiritual need.

**Assignment Two:** Try to pray often. **(1 Thessalonians 5:17)** We are at war. Make prayer part of your Christian walk.



#### ***Part Four: The Power of Faith***

There is power in belief. How a person believes in God, speaks in their daily lives. Faith is made manifest in love and in its fruits. **(Galatians 5:6/John 14:15;23-24)** Faith is brought to life in our daily works. **(James 2:14-26 )** A weak life has a weak faith. A strong life comes from having a mighty faith. A person of strong conviction can make a greater appeal to the world. For people hear the chime of sincere truth in a voice filled with belief. People also sense doubt, insincerity, indifference, floundering belief, as well. If you want to better touch people through the power of the gospel, then first believe in the gospel, (with all your heart) from your very core.



Charisma, persuasion, comes from conviction. Though this ancient Greek word is not in the Bible, it is still has an interesting old Greek word worth sharing. The word “enthusiasm” comes from the Greek word “entheos” which means, God within. Source: <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/enthusiasm>

Let me ask you a question. Is God so intertwined in your life and in your faith that you shine with such belief, passion, conviction that people can see Him in you? Does your belief live inside of you to the point that your enthusiastic in your actions and words, in matters relating to your faith?

When we strongly believe in the God, and His truths, (His providence/guidance, the Bible promises, the hope of heaven, the spiritual support Jesus gives, the Christian teachings of the scripture, etc.) then our excitement, feelings, that we hold within us, our “enthusiasm” will come to the surface.

---

## Applicational Lesson Exercise:

**Reading Section: Exercises for strengthening ones faith.**

**Grow your faith through Bible study.**

The Bible says, **“Faith comes from hearing and hearing comes from the Word of God.” (Romans 10:17)**

So, by logical necessary inference we can deduct, if we want more faith we must expose ourselves more to the Bible. We need to invest in reading the Word for our continued growth and maturity. **(1 Peter 2-3)** Without regular reading of the Word, we’ll become weak and spiritually faint. **(Amos 8:11-13)** The truth is vital for our spiritual life. **(Matthew 4:4)** We grow, weaken, and even die, on the premise of how much our spirits receive nourishment from Bible study.

We need to be doing daily Bible study, which is a must in being able to be strong spiritually speaking in our fights against Satan **(1 John 2:14)**. And to prevent us from spiritually slipping. **(Palms 37:31/Psalms 119:11)**

Your faith will grow when you make God and His kingdom a priority. Talking to God and having Him talk to you, (through the Word) is a vital part of making your relationship with Him a top focus. Faith builds enthusiasm. Enthusiasm is like a magic wand. You can't directly measure it, but people can feel when you do your work enthusiastically. People notice when you're enthusiastically talking to people. People notice when you're enthusiastically sharing the gospel opportunity. Your friends notice when you're enthusiastically communicating your vision (in church work) with your evangelism team. It's been said that sales and evangelism is best vocally expressed by how one truly feels about what they are talking about.

Such communication is simply a transference of energy and belief from one person to the other. When you know who you are deep down, (as a Christian) and you know (to your core in conviction) where you're going, (to Heaven) that's when people can feel the energy you have. When they can feel your enthusiasm about your belief in Jesus, (and His promises) then you pass that feeling on to them. Your enthusiasm becomes a part of them. They become enthusiastic alongside you.

Go out and do your work with the power of faith and enthusiasm behind all your kingdom-building efforts.

Know when you have a committed faith in God, you'll have perfect peace. Fix your thoughts on God through Bible study and meditation, grow your faith. As it says in **Isaiah 26:3 "You will keep in perfect peace all who trust in you, all whose thoughts are fixed on you!"**

If we know the Father directs the steps of those who trust in Him and walk His paths, **(Proverbs 3:5-6)** we know that all things will work together for good, **(Romans 8:28)** if we love our Lord in how we follow His written will, **(John 14:15)**.

To know God is in charge, and to fix our thoughts on our Lord, **(Hebrews 12:2)** is peace, ultimate peace. Understanding how Providence's hand plays a role in our lives, is comfort and assurance. Knowing we are here for a reason...is faith made flesh. Such faith is real, nourishing, refreshing, and promising.

I walk into the darkness; I know not the future. But I trust in Him. And that is enough. I know the good gifts I will receive are from God, **(James 1:17)**. And I know His Word will guide me, as a lamp to my feet and a light to my path, **(Psalm 119:105)**. As children, take your Fathers hand in trust. And walk with Him down the dark wooded pathways of life. Know He'll safely walk with you, till you get home.

Leaders focus on who they are becoming more than what they are getting. A leader's mindset is not about mere activities, or on the rewards, or accolades, one may receive in doing God's work. It's about who she or he is becoming. A leader knows it's not possible to hold the title of "leader" long-term without becoming a person capable of doing so.

Leading is about changing yourself from the inside out. Leaders are focused on who they are becoming versus what they're getting. Leaders don't just believe they can, they know (with God's help) they will. There is a vital difference between believing you can do something and knowing without a doubt that you will do it. That's where faith comes in. Knowing there is a greater Hand than yours steering the course of your life, gives that assurance. **(Proverbs 3:5-6)**

Those who become leaders in kingdom work don't just believe they can achieve success; they know they will. God is able. And consistent work will yield, (as one learns and grows from failures and successes), positive results.

When you go from believing you could do evangelism/get results to knowing without a doubt that are going to do it, that's when things change. When you shift from believing you could do it to knowing you are going to do it, life shifts. When you do believe you will achieve, the result is in your mindset. Your attitude will change, your energy will change.

Your confidence and conviction will change. Faith is a powerful force, so is doubt and disbelief. When you have faith God is in charge, that its Him working in you and that He's guiding the course of your life, you know everything will work out as it should.

This knowing piece is the internal shift many would-be leaders will never make. Where are you right now? Do you know without a doubt you're going to serve Jesus for God's glory. Do you believe He is directing your life?

Do you know you can do beautiful things for the King? You can go through the motions of talking with people all you want, but until you make the shift, (believing in God's ability to save and in the power of the gospel -**Romans 1:16**) the lost people in this world... won't (in likelihood) be as attracted to what your sharing, (as they could be) if you don't actually believe in it, (yourself).

And people can sense if you doubt your own words. Now I am not saying it's not okay to be nervous, or make mistakes, etc. Even as a beginner you may have struggles with your faith in the process of sharing God/His Word. I am saying this, as you process as a Christian in evangelism your faith needs to be pointed upwards, not inwards.

As you grow in His work, this will become easier to do. And even if you don't have strong convictions, souls can still come to Jesus through your invites. But the greater your conviction is when doing the evangelism process, the greater the lost can sense/feel His message, (coming from within you).

**When we grow in faith, we change.**

**Our eyes will begin to become open. Our awareness becomes more clear.**

When we see the unseen through the eyes of faith. When scriptures are as real and alive as the world around us, we cannot but see angels, demons, Providence's Hand, the love of God, the grandeur of living, the excitements of Heaven, and the fears of Hell.

A sunset will remind us of what is to come. The storm will cause us to think of His power. The world will stir up truths of what is, what was and what is to be.

When we dare to believe, then that's when the veil is open, and we see. The result leads to greater trust, deeper gratitude, and a more complete surrender.

Faith comes from hearing the Word, **(Romans 10:17)**. The more you study the greater your belief becomes. Study regularly and pray consistently. Talk with the Father as with a friend. Let His words council you at night. And your faith will grow in the measure you do these things.

***Psalms 16:7 "I will praise the Lord, who counsels me; even at night my heart instructs me. 8 I keep my eyes always on the Lord. With Him at my right hand, I will not be shaken. 11 You make known to me the path of life; you will fill me with joy in your presence, with eternal pleasures at your right hand."***

---

**Grow your faith through prayer.**

**In your faith pray often:** Jesus talked with our Friend regularly alone. **Mark 1:35**  
***"Very early in the morning, while it was still dark, Jesus got up, left the house and went off to a solitary place, where He prayed."***

Christ prayed, even on the eve before His death. **(Luke 9:18)** This was how He got strength and nourishment from the Father. The Bible shares that at times, Jesus spoke out loud in prayer. **(John 17:10-26)**

**It's worth reminding and mentioning again this important point:** Talking out loud is more personal, and intimate and it lets your thoughts flow. Trying to think of long phrases for long periods of time within the mind is difficult. Trying to have a verbal communion with the Lord flows more naturally.

***Do the same in prayer, talk with the Lord regularly and your faith will grow.***

Share your hopes, your dreams, your fears, your hurts, your worries, and your pains. Pour yourself out and God will pour Himself into you. Feed on His Word and the Word will seep into you. The ideals (of the Word) will grow within you. They will become more real till you see the unseen and feel what is to come.

Let Him be our song in the night.

***Job 35:9 "Men cry out under great oppression; they plead for relief from the arm of the mighty. 10 But no one asks, 'Where is God my Maker, who gives us songs in the night, 11 who teaches us more than the beasts of the earth and makes us wiser than the birds of the air?"***

***Psalms 42:8 "The LORD decrees His loving devotion by day, and at night His song is with me as a prayer to the God of my life."***

---

**A. Assignment One: Bible study.** Each day (preferably mornings before distracts creep up) make time to read the Word. Reflect on His teachings and look for things that apply to you in what you're facing, or the moral issues you're struggling with. You can search for a theme that you feel you need to study on, for a specific spiritual reason you are facing. Take at least 15 minutes a day to do this. Like pennies in the piggy bank, the studies add up over time, as each penny is invested into your soul's welfare and well-being, you'll gain more inner wealth and spiritual investment. If you feel like you need some sort of guidance in your studies, you can get a Bible study lesson book on a topic or

issue you feel can help you in your spiritual growth. Reading the Word will help with your growth of faith and with your maturity of spirit. This Bible study time can be part of your faith-building/strengthening regiment.

- B. Assignment Two: Find scriptures of faith to read to affirm and strengthen your faith.** Have a small Journal and take at least 5 minutes each day to look up “faith” scriptures of God’s promises. Write them down. As you study the Bible, these verses can be read as *affirmations each day*. Each time you read them, *try to dig down deep into your faith to read the words with conviction*. Faith scriptures can be about the promises of heaven, God never leaving you, etc. They can be about His power/support in your life.

Find Bible passage that help to motivate you, that give courage and confidence...in connection with God/His support. Find scripture on the power of prayer. Find scripture on the power of God working in us, (if we let Him). Look for verses that strengthen your spirit, verses of faith, connected to healing, grace, help, etc. and add the ones that resonate with you, into your Journal. Take time each day to read your Journal. **(Here are some example passages: Isaiah 40:31; Philippians 4:12-13; Romans 8:28; Psalm 18:2).**

- C. Assignment Three: Use your faith in prayer daily to help it grow.** Within a small booklet make a place to write down 5 people to pray for each day. You can use your church bulletin to help you find people if needed. When you pray focus on other people, then just your friends and family. Selflessly pray for strangers. Pray for people you don't like. **(Luke 6:28)** When you pray for your enemies you’ll be blessed. This process leads to forgiveness, healing, and spiritual growth. Dare to believe that God can heal and help the people you pray for. Doubt is a hinderance to success. Faithless prayers do not help a faithful person. **(James 1:6-8)** He may say “no,” but we should dare to believe that HE CAN SAY “YES.”

The powerful component to faith is found expressed in prayer. The more you selflessly pray for others in faith, the stronger your spirit becomes. *The more you (in faith) dig deep down in prayer for another...the more you'll grow in faith.* Faith is like a muscle; it grows when we flex it.

Now I know we don't always receive "yeses" when we pray, but it's the journey that cause us growth, not the destination. What we become through wrestling in prayer, can only come through prayerful faith. When we learn to trust God and let go, surrendering the desired outcome to the Providential Hand of an all-knowing God, we grow inside.

Yet, as we read in the Bible, we know that prayer can turn the tide in health issues, in spiritual battles, in trials and sorrows, *that would never have happened without prayer.* Let us dare to boldly fight heavenly battles through prayer. Let us be prayer warriors. Drive your prayers deep into your doubts and insecurities. The more you do this, the stronger your faith will grow. Pray with faith that what you ask will happen. **(Matthew 19:26/1 John 5:14-15)** But know that even if it does *not happen*...For God does what is best, **(2 Corinthians 12:1-10)** know that *"all things work together for the good to those who love the Lord."* **(Romans 8:28)** Trust that.

**D. Assignment Four: Remember gratitude.** Gratitude and prayer go hand in hand. Our faith is cemented (and strengthened) by our invested feelings in God. And gratitude is one of the most positive feeling we can give to Him, in matters of prayer. In your daily prayers remember to not just "ask," but to "thank." **(1 Thessalonians 5:18)** The Bible shows us that this is part of the process of prayer. **(Philippians 4:4-7)** How would you feel if people were always asking you for things and help but were never thanking you for what you've done for them.



Appreciation goes a long way. Jesus values such attitudes. **(Luke 17:12–19)** The Bible also says ingratitude is a sin. **(2 Timothy 3:2)** We know sin can hinder our walk with the Lord and our prayer lives. Let us focus on having a heart of thankfulness. Ways to help cultivate and maintain a grateful mindset is through creating reminders. Practice digging down deep into your faith when doing this. A sincere “thank you” with conviction affects the giver as well as the Hearer.

You can also choose to give praise. A hymn can be sung during this time as well. Prayers of gratitude in the Bible are often connected to words of praise in song. As you do these activities remember to stir up your faith. The spiritual words you speak to God in prayer and the words you sing to God, help shape one’s spirit (in conviction) when accompanied with strong faith. *These exercises strengthen one’s faith.*

Prayer should be accompanied with praise. I encourage you to do the praise part, throughout the week. It does not have to be every day, but it is important to take time to sing praises to God for what He has done. Focus on believing in the words of praise as you sing them. The more you do this practice the easier it will be. Praise should not be relegated to just church and group devotionals. It should also be a part of the personal Christian walk with God.

**Get a booklet and record your blessings.** Take 5 minutes (before thanking God in prayer) to write down 5 things each day, that our heavenly Father has done for you. It can be an answered prayer, or a beautiful experience our Creator has given you. **(James 1:17)** The more you do this practice the more gratitude you’ll feel in life towards God and for living in general. This practice of focusing on God’s gifts, help led to greater peace and joy. A prayer warrior should be a grateful person. As you pray each day, to thank God, you can use the ideas that you wrote down in your book.

***Count your blessings, write them down. And thank God for them.*** Gratitude and faith go hand in hand. Always let your prayers take the form of thanksgiving. Remember as we discussed before to also, spend time with God to share your hopes, dreams, goals. Talk with Him about your aspirations. And connect that time with gratitude. Take time to thank Him for what He's done (for what He will do) for you...in these matters as you travel in your journey with Him. *The more your gratitude grows, the more your faith will grow.*

---

***"Prayerize, picturize, and actualize."*** We should pray about our blessings, picture/remember our earthly/spiritual blessings, and thank God/verbally utter our gratitude for our beautiful blessings our Creator has given us.

---



## Part Five: Going to the Faith Gym

**Ways to access, feel and harness your faith for daily use.**

*In the exercises given in previous sections of this chapter, you are encouraged to dig deep down into your faith. But that is not always easy. Are you struggling with “stirring up” your faith, when doing these exercise?*

The process of getting your faith actively and consciously involved when you want *to feel it, experience it, harness it, is not always easy*. It takes time, patience and does not easily work for everyone. How to deal with this issue?

- **Pray about it:** God helps to answer prayer in these matters. He may also provide ideas, methods, venues for you to pursue that can aide in this undertaking. Continue to pray and try to stir up your faith when praying for your faith to become more easily harnessed, felt, accessed for use, in your daily life.

- **Bible reading:** A venue that you may find helpful (in speeding up this process) is by focusing on a Bible passage that talks about faith (**like Joshua 1:9; 2 Timothy 1:7; Philippians 4:13**) and to read such passages out loud with as much conviction and passion you can muster in your voice. This helps to cement and anchor your words with your feelings in matters of your personal faith/conviction.
- **Working the faith muscle:** *The next venue may seem a little fruity, but the mind is powerful, and the imagination was made by our Creator for our use. We need to understand that our thoughts can influence us. We can use our imagination for good and we can use it for ill. I often use this format to help me “raise the faith bar” on a theme I want to increase my belief in. This overall practice I’ll share increases my faith generally as well.*

*This practice is of course optional. It’s psychological in application and in design. I call this method “Going to the Faith Gym.”*

**Step One:** *What I do to increase my conviction, first I sit down on the ground or in a chair. I close my eyes. I calm my mind. I think of my faith in God.*

**Step Two:** *As I am sitting with my eyes closed, and my mind calm, I take a few minutes to think about my faith. What my faith means to me. I try to sense it. I try to feel it. I spend time alone with this idea, with this feeling. Once I can feel my faith. I try to feel it as strongly as I can. I try to keep that sense and feeling raised high. I practice sensing, feeling this sensation. It might help to read something (like a passage related to faith in the Bible) that generates these thoughts and emotional expressions.*

*You may want to pray or think about some moment in your life that will stir such feelings up, (of faith). Generating a sense, and awareness of your faith*

*may take time. It is not a microwavable dinner. Creating an internal conscious feeling of your faith, that you can sense, may not be instantaneous. But the more you practice this, the easier it will be to stir up your faith. Doing this exercise is impactful for the next step. You can keep doing this exercise throughout the rotation process, till you can sense your faith. Once you have accomplished this, move on to the next step.*

**Step Three:** *Once I can sense my faith on a conscious level. I spend time with my faith. I feel it. I am aware of its presence. I do this for a minute or two. I then prepare myself for a mediation exercise. I use my mind to imagine that all my faith is in the image of a "lever." I slowly begin to imagine that the lever is moving upwards, and as it moves upwards, I imagine my faith begins to grow, and grow and grow. I made the conscientious choice to expect that by doing this mediation, my faith will grow. I focus on moving the lever upwards to accomplish that aim.*

*As you do this meditation exercise, you will feel something inside of you grow, become nourished. Your faith will begin to grow. Depending on your mind, heart, body connection, this process may take time to do... before results happen. Or it may start happening immediately.*

*Like lifting weights at the gym. You're exercising your muscles. But these muscles are within your mind. They are your imagination, your inner willpower, and your faith (itself). The more you do this mediation, the stronger your faith will become. Keep doing this exercise till you have gotten comfortable with this meditation practice. And be consistent in the exercise, till you feel that your faith is growing. Once you have achieved this desired result, you can move on to step four.*

***After you become aware of your faith and raise/strengthen your faith. You may wish to take this practice one step further.***

**Step Four:** *Once you have done this visualization meditation, and you have your faith in God raised as high as it will go, picture a pipe being attached to your faith. Imagine that your faith in God, is being funneled to your written down scriptures or spiritual ideas in your Journal. You can also funnel your faith towards your spiritual hopes, dreams, and desires. As a Christian you can think of your faith being channeled over to the promises, teachings, in the Bible, as well as in the spiritual things mentioned within the Word. Doing this practice will strengthen you in the areas you funneled your faith towards.*

*You can also funnel your faith to your spiritual causes, and your goals connected to your evangelism work. Basically, you can use this method for whatever spiritual theme that you wish. The more you strengthen your faith in God and the more you funnel it to your heart's deepest aspirations, the more your faith (universally) will grow on all levels. It will translate (over time) to how you speak, sing, convey ideas, present yourself. You will become more appealing in your presentations, as you speak with the passion that comes from conviction. Your tones will ring with the strength and sincerity of your faith in what you say and in how you say it.*

---

### **Assignment: Read Norman Vincent Peale's book "The Power of Positive Thinking."**

*I don't endorse everything within this book. But this written work does layout the Bible themes of faith and ideas for strengthening one's faith. This is one of my favorite books. Faith does not fix all of our problems, or cure all those we hold dear, (who have sickness). But it does transform us. Read this book and apply the exercises within this small booklet. Try to reread the book each time you go over my material anew.*



## **Part Six: The Spiritual Need of Prayerful Fasting**

Fasting is the least preached about, prayed about, taught, and practiced Bible truth within the Word of God, (in this modern era). Despite the Old Testament having examples of prophets, kings, fasting out of prayerful concern for a calamity. Despite God's people in the New Testament doing prayerful fasting when preparing for a spiritual event or when facing difficulty. How often do you hear this topic taught in Bible class? How many church elders and preachers do you know, who actively promote fasting?

Jesus, the Apostles, the early disciples, Paul in ministry, etc. lived a life of purpose through prayerful fasting. Ask yourself...is this a modern-day practice?

Back then prayer warriors in struggle with the Enemy...fasted. Nowadays we live in excess in our pleasures, foods, entertainment. Excess to the point that we are well fed on earthly things and malnourished in the heavenly things.

We are weak through the distractions that the bright lights of life show us. The "new and novel" are taking us down *old roads*, guised as modern.

Old forces unseen watch us willingly starve our thoughts from divine meditation, prayer, Bible study, for food, social media, porn, outdoor recreation, the new TV show, movie, etc.

Dare to stop. Take time to reflect. Jesus withdrew into the wilderness, to be alone with God. **(Luke 5:16)** Take time to withdraw from your life. Did Jesus have many social engagements, hobbies, fitness orientated goals.

Did He spend His day focusing on distractions or in how He could serve God? Now I am not saying such things are wrong. I am saying however, that it's the spiritual things of God, that should be our top priority. **(Matthew 6:33)**

The church is dying in America, due to this simple fact, too many saints are more focused on the world then on heavenly things, (like evangelism, mentorship, etc.)

*Starve your distractions to feed your spiritual focus.* This will nourish and nurture your soul. Take time to give God your time in prayer, in songs sung, in Bible study, in meditation.

Fasting will help curb your carnal appetites and give you greater control of your mind and body. You'll be able to better follow this passage below. Consider what the Apostle Paul said about our battles.

**"For though we live in the world, we do not wage war as the world does. The weapons we fight with are not the weapons of the world. On the contrary, they have divine power to demolish strongholds. We demolish arguments and every pretension that sets itself up against the knowledge of God, and we take captive every thought to make it obedient to Christ." (2 Corinthians 10:3-5)**



*Fasting helps us take better control of our thoughts.* This process helps our temperament and willpower in our spiritual battles.

When in your room at home in a quiet place or in a park, forest, beach, take time to be alone with God. Let your spiritual time be a banquet for the soul. Invite your God into your day. Sup upon His presence and upon your time alone with Him.

To go without the trappings of the world for a time, fashions the spirit into a more God dependent way of being.

Go without the world, (TV, radio, music, social media, etc.) fast from such things for a day. Substitute these indulgences for specific spiritual goals and purposes. Let spiritual self-improvement and external service to Christ, take their place.

Food never tastes so good as when eaten sparingly. Life is never so sweet as when pleasures are embraced in moderation. A small meal eaten once a day is richer and more fragrant than gluttonous meals throughout the day. TV, social media, music, sex, food, etc., are best enjoyed when they are given an absence for a time.

Excess dims the senses and slowly hardens the heart to life's graces. When pleasure parts company for a time, her reunion is so much more received with reverence (towards God's gift) and with thanksgiving (for the Giver). When we replace such things with a church work for a person in need, or with prayer, or Bible study, or in the cause of evangelism activities, we starve our distractions and feed our spiritual focus.

To truly know what it is to be grateful... is to be born again each day. The practices mentioned above help with this state of mind.

Fasting helps us appreciate what we have and heightens our senses. This practice helps us experience things as if they are fresh and new. So that we live in a world of wonder and experience things with our senses more strongly. Mortality and the awareness of it...causes one to live in gratitude. To count one's blessings daily,

with a thankful heart, is to make the day's sing. To be mindful of what God has done is to make the night's remembrances (of life) sweet.

Fasting from food and replacing food with spiritual activities is powerful. Especially when you pray with intention for God to act in your life. But if your fasting and instead of doing spiritual things, you're on social media, and watching TV, etc. then such activities slowly defeat the very purpose of the fast. Now I am not saying, never ever. But the priority of a fast is to focus on eternal pursuits. And to forsake the world and its distractions for a time.

The activity of removing tech from your life for a time, is called "dopamine detox." It's worth studying up on, for its benefits. Books and audio books have been written on this activity. And like I said, this behavior (of removing tech, like social media, music, tv, video games, etc.) helps with the fasting process. You can also do the "dopamine detox" outside of fasting. Setting aside tech (centered around pleasure) for a day or for a week, will center a person more on the heavenly things and less on the earthly things. We need to have the mentality that we are citizens of heaven, **(Philippians 3:20/ Hebrews 11:13)** not of this earth. We need to see ourselves as pilgrims **(1 Peter 2:11)** upon this planet. And in that mindset focuses on the eternal. **(Hebrews 11:16)**

When we have this spiritual frame of mind, we'll find we do more spiritual work and we'll focus more on the things that matter, like spending quality family time with those we love. When we have this perspective, we'll focus less on the little things, and more kingdom work (within the home and outside of it) will be achieved. When we realign our priorities more communion with God will take place.

When a person fasts from food, their taste buds reboot and go back to the default cravings (of healthy foods), that the body naturally needs. It's kind of the same way with fasting from earthly distractions. Your spirit will reboot, and you will go back to the default cravings, (like family, prayer, Bible study, service to God, etc.) that your soul naturally needs for a (spiritually) healthy life.

The process is a process. One skipped meal or one hr. of not playing video games is not going to get you an instant “microwave” result. But if you put in the time, investing in the process, the weeks of spiritual dedication to such sacrificial themes will lead to positive blessings and heavenly achievements.

When it comes to fasting: *Learn to fast*. Slowly dip your toe into this luminescent divine stream. Fasting gives people razor control and focus. It moves the spirit into deeper levels of life. If we are to be following Jesus, should we not do as He did?

Fasting shows submission to God, it humbles us. Making the flesh weaker and the spirit stronger. King David said, ***“I humbled my soul with fasting.” (Psalm 69:10)*** You may find yourself relying on God more fully for strength when you fast.

This Bible activity is powerful in combination with prayer. The Bible says many times, fasting accompanied prayer. Especially in the darkest periods of life.

Ezra declared a corporate fast and prayed for a safe journey (from their enemies) for the Israelites as they made the nine-hundred - mile trek to Jerusalem from Babylon. **(Ezra 8:21-23)**

After losing forty thousand men in battle in two days, the Israelites cried out to God for help. **Judges 20:26** says that all the people went up to Bethel and ***“sat weeping before the Lord.”*** They also ***“fasted that day until evening.”*** The next day the Lord gave them victory over the Benjamites.

Jesus expected His followers to fast. **(Matthew 6:16)** Notice Jesus tells His disciples that when they fast to...do it privately. The discourse of His talk was not, a "if" statement but a "when."

Jesus fasted (and prayed) in preparation of His ministry on earth. **(Matthew 4:1-17)** The Apostle Paul and Barnabas fasted (and prayed) in preparation for their missionary journey. **(Acts 14:23)** For any great undertaking or anticipated endeavor, should we not consecrate ourselves to the work through fasting?

Nehemiah mourned, fasted, and prayed when he learned Jerusalem's walls had been broken down, leaving the Israelites vulnerable and disgraced. (**Nehemiah 1:1-4**)

Should we not mourn the decline of the church? Should we not mourn the ruined walls of spiritual Jerusalem? Nehemiah saw the disturbing images of destruction. He *fasted and prayed about the problem*. Then this man got to work. Nehemiah also recruited others to join him in rebuilding the walls of Jerusalem.

Despite persecutions, threats, and enemies, the work continued. By divine support through prayer, fasting and a dedicated spirit this man of faith accomplished his goal. Nehemiah had wisely sought the Lord's help. This alone achieved the victory.

**Nehemiah 6:15** *"So the wall was completed in fifty-two days... 16 When all our enemies heard about this, all the surrounding nations were afraid and disheartened, for they realized that this task had been accomplished by our God..."*

The walls came up in record time. All knew this work was supported by a divine/Providential Hand. Prayer and fasting was a component in this process of spiritual support and guidance.

**Another example** is found in **Luke 2**. The gospel tells the story of an eighty-four-year-old prophetess named Anna. **Verse 37** says, *"She never left the temple but worshiped night and day, fasting and praying."* Anna was devoted to God, and fasting was one expression of her love for Him. Anna was blessed to see baby Jesus in her old age and was made aware of His future promise to the world. Anna fasted for she valued God and had reverence towards His name.

Should we not give a gift of personal love and sacrifice through fasting? We have Jesus' sacrifice, we have Heaven, we have forgiveness, we have so much to dedicate a fast for in prayer. Fasting in our hard days should be done, but they should also be done in our joyful days.

---

**Other benefits of fasting:** Fasting sharpens the mind, helps with weight loss, reboots the immune system, gives the digestive tract a period to rest, which in the long term helps the body work better. Fasting cleans the house. The circulation system gets stronger. People who fast regularly live longer. Such people tend to be more emotionally and mentally balanced.

We need to bring fasting back into the church culture again. Ask yourself when we stopped fasting. It was during the time of the days of the great awakening we fasted. During this time, we (as the people of God) grew.

We grew in part due to the attitude fasting was involved with. Hospitality, evangelism, giving prayerful blessing, and fasting, were parts of the Christian walk back then. Saints even regularly read their Bible. Which is not the practice in many homes. Back then men and women were known as "walking Bibles." Nowadays, it's hard to find such people who fit that title. These New Testament character traits sadly have stopped being the norm.

**Personal Fasting thoughts. Ideas you might like to try:** Sometimes I light a candle when fasting. When I fast, I have a spiritual theme in mind to pray for. As I pass the candle throughout the day, it reminds me to pray, (right then) for the desired ideal. Fasting is also a time of gratitude. It is a time to prayerfully reflect upon my blessings. Fasting gives power to prayer. The longer the fast, the greater the investment in submission and sacrifice you've made to God. The longer the fast the greater the result.

When it comes to fasting, begin small, it can be missing a meal for breakfast. Later it can be 2 or more meals. Experiment, see how long you can go, as you progress through this spiritual practice. I encourage you to learn to fast, when in prayer for a big decision, when fighting hard battles, when great news comes. Let fasting slowly become a staple part of your life. Let us follow the ways of the Master.



### **My fasting story:**

As I'm writing this book, it's been over 10 years since I've begun doing evangelism. The catalyst of this work began during a rainy season in Florida, in a small rural area known as Odessa. I spent the day in an isolated forested area called Lake Rogers park.

The lakes were flooded. It was wet and stormy and gloomy. That day I wanted to approach the throne about my life's issues and concerns that I had. I spent time talking to God, (out loud) about my hopes, dreams, fears, goals, discouragement, frustrations, etc. During this time, while walking and sharing with the Lord many things that were on my heart, I had a chief theme I wanted to speak to the King about. *I asked our Father for guidance, support and help in beginning the work of evangelism.*

The structure you see in the above picture is where I did a lot of the talking. When I went back to my home, I did a ten day (Master Cleanse) fast. The fasting theme I focused on, (with prayer), was about evangelism. I wanted to learn and grow in this work. I had neglected the Bible call and I wanted to change. These ten days were transformative. Each day I focused my prayers and my fasting on this theme. And I dedicated my fasting to God. That should be the initial purpose of a fast. During the fast, the mind and attitude, the activities that you do, should center around Him.

This choice of fasting forever changed the course of my life. I believe doors were opened and people were made available, because of the prayerful/fasting time I did with the Lord.

Later on, I was contacted by an evangelist, named Royce Bell. He did outreach work in San Bernardino, California. Royce invited me to come up and join him for a week of intensive evangelism work. Later I was invited to work with Royce at the Mt View church of Christ as a paid evangelist.

Fasting is a process. The more you consistently give yourself over to this practice, the more you'll learn to sacrifice (your spirit and will) to His work. Mindful fasting helps us let go of self, ego and to let God in. This is why it is such a needed and valued asset in the Christian walk.

Prayer, Bible study helps us learn to surrender. But fasting also plays a key role in this developmental ideal. When you fast, you'll find things begin to open for you as well. Prayer is shown by fervent faith, fasting is the work that *shows our active faith*. A living faith (toward God) of fasting shows our dedication to the themes prayed for as we surrender our spirit to Him.

---

### ***Fasting types: From easiest to hardest.***

When you begin to consider fasting options, I encourage you to start off slow and to begin at an easy place. When you fast, you might want to try the easiest stage first and work your way down the “fasting ladder” as you progress and adapt. Here is the ladder from easiest to hardest.

- A. I’ve personally found the easiest fast is a “**Juice fast**” A juice fast, is drinking pulpy vegetable juice mixed with fruit juice. You can also drink vegetable juice or fruit juice separately. This juice is best if it is made fresh from a blender or juicer. This fast is basically drinking liquid food. The more pulp the fuller you’ll be. My favorite liquid to use is watermelon. I personally like to slice up a whole watermelon and liquify it up in a blender. I drink this juice throughout the day. It has little sugar and tastes good.
- B. A “**Liquid fast**” (is when your drinking appetite suppressing liquids like coffee, back/green tea, caffeine drinks, lemon ginger water, and helpful drinks like the “Master Cleanse,” etc. )
- C. When doing a “**Water fast**” you’re drinking nothing but water. This requires more willpower. And maybe considered an advanced fast. But the results of the fasting happen sooner, in mind alertness, body weight loss, being in a more humbled/surrendered state, etc. This type of fast was what was normally practiced in the Bible.
- D. The hardest fast is “**Dry fasting.**” This is a fast that excludes all drinks, including water. This is a powerful fast. And is advanced. Caution needs to be taken when doing this. A person cannot survive more than three days without water. But one day of this fasting is equivalent (for the body) to three days of water fasting. If I do this type of fasting, I tend to only do it for one day.



## Supplements that help with fasting:

For missing one meal, you probably don't need any of the below. But if you want to slowly build your bodies tolerance of fasting up to a *day or days*, these ideas can be helpful. You might want to experiment to see what works best for you.

**For acidity** when fasting I have found Baking soda tablets (or powers) will help stop stomach acidity as well as heartburn. It's been effective to take away acid reflux when I've fasted.

**Fasting is made easier** through teas, coffee, energy drinks and appetite suppressant pills. If **water fasting**, appetite suppressant pills and baking soda can really help out. As you adapt and grow stronger in fasting, you may want to go off of the pills.

For a **liquid fast**, caffeine drinks helps with energy. Drinking salt water, gator aide and electrolyte drinks help with cramping and with staying active. Magnesium supplements also helps prevent muscle cramps. When fasting remember to stay hydrated. Note: cramping should not be an issue, unless you fast for many days.

**Special drinks that help with a "Liquid fast."** Drinking ginger with lemon water helps with fasting. The "Master Cleanse" method is a great way to go about fasting as well. You can learn more about the "Master Cleanse" by searching online. When fasting for days, you need to **keeping the mind fed**: Taking B vitamin pills or liquids help the mind stay balanced, healthy, normal.

**Being busy**: staying active helps the time move with fasting. Mental work or physical work stimulates the brain to focus on other things then hunger. Also, aerobic exercises, like swimming, running, cycling, can help suppress ones appetite.

**Things to remember when breaking a fast**: if you've been fasting (context focused on water fasting, though other formats apply) for a day or more, its best to break a fast with soft foods, yogurt, soup, oatmeal, etc. Keep in mind the

stomach has not been working. It will need something easy in its system, to begin to get its “engine” started again. Eating steak, hard uncooked veggies, etc. will shock the system and (for long fasts) can even damage the body. I heard of a story of a man who fasted a long time, I think it was 20 days and broke his fast going out to a restaurant and ordering a big steak.

He was rushed to the emergency room and there he died. It’s a simple rule, (for long fasts that are a week or more) eat soft foods for the first 2-3 meals before going to other food types. If you only fast for 1-2 days this serious issue won’t be a problem. But it is still not healthy (or wise) to wake up the stomach with hard to digest foods. For really long fasts, 7 days-14 days, etc. I encourage you to do more research. Its best to break such fast with soft foods. You can even break such fasts with fruit or veggie juices.

**Fasting does not mean you stop living life, (especially for long fasts).** You can still pick the kids up from school, go to work, run errands, etc. *Fasting is about focus. The goal is to take time for prayer and to fast in connection to the theme prayed about.* You can do prayer while driving your kids to soccer practice. Or pick up items for your wife/husband. *The ideal to remember: Fasting is about surrender and sacrifice. When your fasting, and you are taking the time to pray, you are meeting that goal.*

When you fast, have a theme to focus on in prayer. Fast and pray about that theme, as you go through the day. Have a prayerful reason for fasting. Examples: A fast can be about gratitude for a new baby, a struggle at work, a new (spiritual) goal you have, etc. It’s also important to incorporate spiritual things into this process of fasting, (like Bible study, singing, meditation, spiritual service, etc.). But life moves on and it’s understandable that you have responsibilities to home and family.

However, (for a half a day or a whole day) *if you can* remove yourself from such responsibilities, you'll find that such a time of solace will be rewarding. I encourage you to do this if you can. Biblical fasting tended to be the absence of earthly pursuits and activities. The more you can incorporate that into a fasting period, half a day, a whole day, etc. the more you'll be able to dedicate your time in committing your whole self, body, mind, heart, spirit, to our Lord.

-----

*"Fasting in the Biblical sense is choosing not to partake of food because your spiritual hunger is so deep, your determination in intercession so intense, or your spiritual warfare so demanding that you have temporarily set aside even fleshly needs to give yourself to prayer and meditation." - Wesley Duewel*

-----

## Lesson Thought Exercises:

**A. Write down** the battles you are facing or will face. Could prayer and fasting on the such battles help? Why could such activities help you?

**B. Write down** your spiritual ventures, projects, goals, and future works, etc. How could prayer and fasting help you in these pursuits?

**C. Think outside of the box.** Brainstorm other things fasting should be used for. Think of specific ways you can incorporate fasting into your spiritual life, (in matters of work, goals, problems, rejoicing, future battles, etc.)

**D. Write down the things that are distracting you** from Bible study, prayer, singing, spiritual service, etc.

**E. Distractions:** What earthly things (pleasure oriented) take up most of your time? **Write them down here.**

**F. *The slice of time in your life:*** How much time does earthly pleasure oriented things take up your time during the week? Think of this add up the weeks, months, and years of such consuming investments take in your life. Write down (on separate sheet) the weekly time spent, the monthly, the yearly. You will probably need a calculator.

Now, I am not saying, don't have hobbies, or that your sinning when you're doing secular activities for fun. I just want you to know how much you're investing in these earthly pleasures. This will help you learn about what your prioritizing. Especially when you do the next exercise, **(G.)**

**G. *Heaven focused:*** How much time a week do you devote to Bible study, prayer, spiritual service, etc. Add that up (a sheet of paper) per month and year. Compare the answers in **F.** to the answers in **G.** Which part of your life is taking precedent? Is it the earthly pleasure pursuits or is it the heavenly ideals?

---

## Applicational Lesson Exercise:

**H. *Try to focus on fasting.*** Find a time during the week to devote to spiritual time. Consecrate one meal to God, as you work for His cause. Spend time, (as you fast) in prayer and Bible study. Focus on a theme you want to dedicate to your fast and prayer time. Try to set aside one day each week to do this practice.

As you progress over time, try to increase your fasting periods. The more you fast (mindfully in prayer) with a focused purpose, (examples: for a spiritual goal, struggling with an issue, rejoicing over a special event that happened in your life, needing help with something that is coming up, fasting in gratitude for all the blessings you've been given, etc.) the more you'll see yourself changing. The longer the fast the more powerful the inner transformation.

*I really could write a book on this topic of fasting. I don't think I am doing this theme justice. I just want to say the surrendering aspect of fasting is powerful. This helps the spirit kneel before God more easily during a fast and even after a fast. The more fasting is done, with the mindful intent of surrender and dedication to God, (through prayer and/or Bible study) the more the soul learns to let go and to let Him come in.*

- I. Dopamine Detox.** *Set aside a time during a fast or even on another occasion for a "fast" of worldly distractions. Aim for a few hrs., (where you focus on spiritual things, like prayer, Bible study, singing, Bible mentorship, doing His work, etc.). Try to do this every week. As you develop and adapt, try to add more time to this type of fast. As you grow stronger in this activity, try to add a full day to this endeavor. You may wish to add more days to this fast, as you progress. You will find going without tech and worldly distractions is as hard a sacrifice as going without food.*

*But you'll grow from it and realign your priorities, sharpen your focus, and increase your zeal as you seek after God. Prioritizing heavenly thoughts and deeds above the worldly distractions will help you get more things for our Lord and for His kingdom. You will also find yourself doing more value ordained things, like spending time with family, walking outside to pray and reflect. You will get more done in life, when you remove the worldly "brain junk food" from your life.*

**Please note:** *when I say fasting from tech, I am not talking about work. I am talking about pleasure. We all have things we have to do online, on our computer, on our phone, etc. But to many times instead of us viewing such items as tools for us to use, such tools end up mastering/using use. When we fast from the world, we will also see our productivity source as well in our business endeavors. In general, a person tends to get more things done when the distractions are removed.*



## Chapter 10: How to Plant and Grow a Church

How many congregations in America do you know of...that have recently been planted by saints? I'm not talking about divisions and people leaving one church to start another congregation. I'm asking, how many churches in the US are planted through evangelism?

In the last decade in the Tampa Bay area of Florida (where I live) and the surrounding areas, to my knowledge, we've lost 6 churches. Yet I know of no new churches being born through outreach.

I've traveled all over America and have been a member at over a dozen congregations through the years. I've seen a lot. Both good and bad. I once knew of two large churches, (around 300 people). Both congregations talked about evangelism. Yet 1 church made the great commission a lifestyle activity as the New Testament pattern shows. Within a year of doing such work they added 70



new members to their church. The other church had a paid “evangelist,” who only had 1 activity a year. There was no evangelism regularly actively practiced within this church. Such activities were relegated to a month for a one-time event. A 30 day event investment of time/energy was given out of the total year, of 365 days. This is a weak investment. Can you imagine devoting 1 month a year to go out and exercise or to try to get into a relationship and begin dating, or to get a degree at a college when trying to get an education, etc....and expecting massive results? No, of course not. That thinking is not grounded in reality. That’s pie in the sky thinking.

You have to regularly invest your time to incorporate such behaviors as part of your lifestyle, if you want to get consistent and long-term results. In secular things, everyone knows this. Why should it be any different for spiritual things? Expecting “microwave” results, when we give God our leftover crumbs (of our bounty of time) a year is unrealistic.

Doing evangelism training as just a “special event” to do one time, every year, is not prioritizing God’s command to share Jesus. No congregation is going to become a strong evangelistic church centered around Jesus’ theme on soul saving, if evangelism is not an activity taught and encouraged among its members through events and supported activities. For evangelism to take root within the churches culture it must be regularly practiced and promoted.

Evangelism training should not be reserved for just a once-a-year event. Sharing Jesus should not be done once every blue moon.

It should be done consistently within a church. Yet to many saints seem to think they can devote a small slice of the year to following God in evangelism and the rest of the year they can ignore this command. We are supposed to ***“be never lacking in zeal”*** in our service. **(Romans 12:11)**

Such people seem to think they can invest poorly into His decree by giving Him 5 percent of their lives for the year and leave out the rest of the 95 percent of that year in honoring His Word and command to try to save.

Can you imagine Jesus sitting on the sidelines when on earth and just doing evangelism once a year or on some designated day. And ignoring the lost, broken souls the rest of the year? No, of course not. Compassion for the unsaved as well as devotion for the Fathers will, made Him do otherwise...

In secular things... If a person worked at their job only once a year, they would be considered an unreliable employee. Yet as children of the Father, too many saints seem to think they can ignore His command to share Jesus, except once a year, when the mood suits them. When they do this, such people give God their leftover scraps.

We eat, play, work, each day, and each week, of each month of each year, yet we scratch our heads, when no massive results happen when we do just one (30 minute) event a year, of door knocking at the 11th hr. before a Gospel Meeting.

This is token evangelism, when people just check boxes and play lip service to a cause. If a parent only parented once a year, they would be considered an absentee parent. If a husband or wife only followed the commands within the Bible to support their spouse once a year, would you say they were following the Word? We are told to love God with all our hearts, minds, souls. **(Matthew 22:37)** This is a life of total commitment to His truth.

If a father or mother only followed the Bible commands once a year to raise their children up in the Lord, to instruct them and teach them in His truth, if they did it only once a month or week or day, for a year and ignored the command the rest of the year, do you think they would be considered faithful to the command to disciple and raise children in the Lord? No of course not.

The best churches in the brotherhood, the thriving churches, have an evangelism culture. And how they have that culture is they're continually introducing, exposing, sharing the New Testament principles, the New Testament stories, New Testament methods, the New Testament ideas, the

New Testament responsibilities of doing **evangelism**. Minimal effort gives minimal results. No New Testament church in the Bible planned to do one evangelism event once a year. The Bible teaches that the gospel message was shared actively. The Word teaches the message was regularly proclaimed.

**(Acts 8:4/ Acts 11:19)**

Dusting off evangelism from the shelf like it's some old antique or rusty thing and taking, it out into the light of day once a year is not living the Bible command to *activity share Jesus*. And yes, all of God's commands are to be actively practice. **(1 Joh 2:3-6)** We don't follow God's teaching *part of the time*, but *all of the time*.

Anyone who claims they are not committing adultery part of the time, or that they are not forsaking the assembly part of the time, or that they are not stealing from their company part of the time, etc. and think that their partial adherence to the teachings of Christ, on a given day, season, or "special occasion" are pleasing to God are in for a rude awaking at judgement. Our Lord asks for devotion and faithfulness. True devotion is wholehearted. True faithfulness is constant and unwavering in adherence to our Fathers will.

God wants us to seek His kingdom and righteousness first, **(Matthew 6:22)**. He wants us to prioritize Him above our secular activities and above life's distractions.

---

### **The importance of example:**

***Spiritual challenge in studies:*** I encourage you in your future studies, to take some time to look at the Bible examples of zeal within the Old and New Testament. Within the Word we can read of spiritual themes of church planting and other Bible themes of evangelism. In the book of Acts, and within the gospels, we can read of a lifestyle of evangelism that was actively part of the early New Testament life of the Christians. We can read of mentorship and evangelism examples within the written Word. From such patterns we can see the importance of doing God's work.

## Example of Evangelism: The story of Paul

*Paul did not sit around waiting to do outreach for some set aside time on a chosen week or month during the year.* He was on fire for Jesus and his life showed it. Paul made it a point to refresh the new converts with the evangelist training they needed, **(Acts 20:20;31)** This man's dedication to Christ, caused churches to be planted. Those with Paul, like Silas, Mark, (also known as John Mark) Barnabas, Titus, Luke, Timothy also helped him build up the borders of our Father's kingdom.

Paul traveled more than 10,000 miles and **established/planted at least 14 churches**. He took three separate missionary journeys that took Paul through Greece, Turkey, Syria, and numerous regions you won't find on modern-day maps.

As we have talked about, the key to outreach is to know, **"evangelism is mentorship."** Paul brought these young men, (Titus, Timothy) with him. They saw Paul's example, Bible teaching and outreach work and were encouraged to help Paul in doing the same, in this ministry. Paul helped these men develop as leaders.

---

## Example of Evangelism: The work of Jesus and His early disciples

Mentorship as we covered earlier, did not start with Paul. Our Lord, Teacher and Master did evangelism regularly. He also training those who followed Him.

When the Apostles and disciples became self-reliant in this work of evangelism... What did Jesus do? After our Savior, worked with His Apostles and the 72 disciples...when our Lord thought that they were ready, He sent them off, to do outreach, **(Apostles - Mark 6:7/ 72 disciples - Luke 10:1).**

During Christ's time on earth, His followers, were being molded into future evangelists and soul winners for the upcoming Great Commission.

The evangelism work did not end with Jesus, after Christ left this world, His Apostles constantly, kept sharing the gospel. **(Acts 5:41-42)**

Jesus trained others. He passed the torch. **(Luke 24:45-47)** And this work did not stop with these men who were with Jesus during His ministry. The work continued through the Great Commission, for other saints to follow.

Acts records the Apostles grounded the newly saved disciples in the truth. **(Acts 2:40-42;47)** This teaching would include Christ's command to save/teach others the gospel. **(Matthew 28:18-20)** This is a multiplying process. When the saved, save others and teach those saved to save others, the process continues. **(2 Timothy 2:2)**

Evangelism was active, not passive. It was readily done. Not set on a burner for a given occasion. The saints in the Bible made sharing Jesus a part of their lifestyle. We can read that this is what the disciples did as recorded in Acts. **(Acts 8:4-5;11:19-21)**

Jesus did not sit around and wait for a special event once a year, for evangelism work to begin, (for a short, allotted time). The Apostles and the disciples did not check some box once a year and the rest of the time ignore those broken, lost, crying souls...who needed salvation.

The Jesus we read about in the Bible was wholeheartedly invested in God's will for sharing the truth. His ministry was shown in zeal by how our Savior actively shared the gospel. Read the gospels **(Matthew, Mark, Luke, John)** and you will see an active lifestyle of evangelism in our Lord.

Jesus had compassion on those in spiritual need. To many Christians in this day and age, have deaf ears, and blind eyes to those spiritually hurting. They wait till some special occasion for a one-time year event, (that their Lukewarm church has set aside) treating outreach as some national holiday, to be observed every blue moon.

Too many Christians do one gospel meeting each year and on the 12th hour...they meet up to pass out some flyers.... To check of the box. Or a congregational group will do some grand event once a year.

And the rest of the year, these same saints will choose to ignore the souls (they interact with) that are going to Hell. This needs to change in the churches! God's command is to be obeyed all of the time, not regulated to some one-time event a year. For a church to grow, people need to actively, whole early, faithfully follow our Lords command to seek and save. **(Mark 16:15;20/Jude 23)**

**For churches to grow and for new congregations to be planted, evangelism must be an active part of the Christian life. Idleness, apathy, and indifference will be a hindrance to (congregational) growth in this essential soul saving work.**

---

***From the book "Awaken the Sleeping Giant"***

***by Brother David W Hamrick***

**From the chapter "EVERY MEMBER A SOUL WINNER"**

*"Statistics show that 50% of Bible studies completed result in conversion. By studies completed I mean those who willingly study the Bible with you through the entire course, whether it be three lessons or five or six. Therefore, if you conduct 20 complete Bible studies per year you should have 10 additions to the church. What would happen if you trained five members to conduct 10 Bible studies per year?*

*The result would be 25 new converts every year. If there were 20 members who conducted 10 studies in a year the result would be 100 new converts that year. That's a pretty amazing statistic." Page 121*

---



## How to plant a church.

*Here are some ideas for planting a church from scratch. Like baking bread, there is a recipe for church growth. To first plant a church we need to start with evangelism. But we also need to focus on logistics.*

---

### **Stage one – Getting people/Finding a place to worship.**

**Getting people:** *How to invite and get a group together? For places that have few Christians, you may not get many to join you. For a time...It may just be you, your wife, and kids. I began doing evangelism work with about 4 people helping me. I've even done this work alone and grew the group through evangelism. Though that does take longer, it is possible.*

*But if you know of Christians in your area, invite them. Make it personal. The best way to get results is through face-to-face invitations. Like evangelism, the more personal an interaction is the better. Now I am not saying don't invite others through email, or text. Sometimes, due to distances and for wanting to reach a*

*large audience, this is best. But, if possible, when it comes to inviting your spiritual friends and close church family members, a personal invite is best. Think outside of the box. As you save souls, the group will grow. As time passes and more souls are saved the church will get bigger and bigger.*

***Finding a place to worship:*** You initially can start up a meet up spot in a home or rent a hotel conference room. You can also rent a small office building. In the long run meeting in a home is cheapest but having a paid for official/professional location (for meeting) is easier to promote. Such a meeting place (due to being larger) is also better for growth as more souls are saved.

*For such locations, (like a hotel conference room, rented office building, etc.) no money goes to upkeep, of the building or lawn, etc. That means more funds can go to the church's evangelism work in the community.*

*Having a church building takes up money (in building upkeep, landscaping, large building payments, etc.) away from the more important spiritual needs, of Christian development and soul saving. Most church buildings end up taking up the congregant's time. The leaders and members are focused on taking care of the building and the inner issues of such work.*

*For many religious groups including the Lord's church, about 80 percent of the funds given on Sunday go to church upkeep, repairs, mortgage, etc. I'm not saying a "church building" can't be an option for those who wish to pursue it, as a group grows numerically in evangelism work.*

*But count the cost, before making such an investment. Ask yourself, is this the best use of the Lord's funds? Is having to deal with church building responsibilities and "distractions," the best use of the flock's time and energy when it comes to focusing on His work?*

***When first beginning,*** for financial reasons, I'd first meet within the home of a saint. If you're meeting in a house, I'd stick to one location. Changing homes every other week can be confusing to visitors/evangelism contacts and new converts. Meeting in a hotel's conference room is a good answer when expanding in growth.

*Renting an office space may be more cost-effective long term. Daycares, schools,*



*a space in the mall, libraries, Community centers or civic centers are other locations that may rent out to you. When you and your Christian friends meet up at a given location for worship, it's important to study evangelism themes during Bible class. A newly planted church must consistently be focusing on soul saving work, for that congregation to last. The lessons can be on other things too, but soul saving themes need to be regularly addressed within the group, to foster/maintain an evangelistic environment within that church.*

-----

## **Step Two – When you meet together.**

### **(for worship and in evangelism groups)**

Talk about ideas, methods, goals, plans. Research online, look for quality sources to implement. I personally have put together training content that you can access.

I have training videos, articles, books, lessons, written blog, strategy page, etc. at this link here [www.churchofchristevangelism.com](http://www.churchofchristevangelism.com)

You can also revisit the section titled: **“Training Resources” in Chapter 8.** For detailed listed content, and sourced links.

-----

## **Step Three – Implement those ideas you learn.**

Lifestyle evangelism is New Testament in its origin and this format is effective. Doing outreach once a season, year, etc. is not effective. You get out of this work, what you put into it. *If you invest a small amount in evangelism, (in time and energy) you will get very little, (in results). It's that simple. You get what you give.*

In dating, work, education, going to the gym, we get from our efforts the amount of time investment we place into our goals. If we value Heaven, God, and His Word, we will make His work a big part of our lives, and not give our *Maker our leftovers.*

---

## Step Four – Doing the Math.

On average if one person at the very minimum, saves *one soul a year*. And there are *9 other people* within that group who also do evangelism work and save *a soul that year*, (equals 10 souls) what will be the end result in *5 years*? The amount would equal *50 souls added* to the body of Christ.

If those *10 newly converted souls* are trained to do evangelism each year, and they EACH in turn convert *10 more people each year*, what will be the end result be in *5 years*? This equals *50 MORE people added* to the newly planted church. In *5 years*, the *number adds up to 100 souls saved and added* to the new congregations.

Now I know some people will fall away and slip through the cracks. *But if you include the new converts in Bible study, church work, in evangelism activities, and show them Christian love (including hospitality) that number should be very small.*

I also know other new converts may choose to worship at another faithful church in the area. But even in this the margin should be very small. New converts tend to be very loyal to their congregation and to the members who helped bring them to the Lord. The newly converted are an asset. They tend to be the hardest workers for His kingdom in matters of soul saving.

But let's just jump into the least likely, worst-case scenario and say you lose half of the converts. At the end of *5 years*, the *church growth should still be about 50 new members*, who are *added to the newly planted church*. Again, this is not written in stone. This is just a projection. Things change, people die, move away, etc. But I wanted to highlight this growth projection, to show you it is possible to get results. I've seen it happen and I know of churches that have had results in growth through actively doing outreach.

All that needs to be done for growth to take is for saints to choose to make an investment in God's kingdom. If you work consistently week in and week out, day in and day out, looking for opportunities to invite people to Bible studies, through the chosen method or methods you pick to do, you'll get results over time. And growth within the church will take place. If you have a group of people who are supporting you in such work, then the church will grow even faster each year. This is the evangelism work cycle that will create growth.

**Evangelism + consistent work + time invested = growth.** This is a powerful formula. Yet, I too often hear preachers and paid evangelists lament that their seeing very little results. The reason for this is due to this simple reason. *They are not consistent in the work.* These same people are the ones who host one event for the year, (singular/one-time events like door knocking, campus outreach, inviting people to church, coffee shop evangelism, etc.) and expect massive results with the minimal efforts they put in the work, (in time and energy).

***Correction: Brother Curran Hyde shared these stats. A special thank you to him for sharing this info with me, and with you. The numbers are even better. "If you start off with 10. That is actually Year 0. At the completion of one year, you would then have 20. I have put it into a table. I have also included if each Christian converted 1 person or if each person converted 2 people."***

Year	$2x = 1+1$	$3x = 1+2$
0	10	10
1	20	30
2	40	90
3	80	270
4	160	810
5	320	2,430
6	640	7,290
7	1,280	21,870
8	2,560	65,610
9	5,120	196,830
10	10,240	590,490

## Step Five –Starting with a good foundation on the Rock.

### (Matthew 7:24-27)

*To have a growing church that is also spiritually healthy, we need to not just focus on numbers but on the spirit of a congregation. These Bible themes must be taught and practiced for a newly planted to church grow in the truth.*

- **Teaching the Bible truths on evangelism:** Christians within a church need to be active in evangelism. But to ignite such activity, they need to first be taught (from the Bible) of the moral *responsibly* we have to share Jesus. A healthy church has compassion for the lost. Too many churches of Christ are closing their doors throughout America, due to the neglect of regularly teaching/practicing this concept. Churches grow when they actively following this Bible command. It does a new church no good, if a few people follow this Bible teaching, while the rest are not trained in this fundamental doctrinal truth. We need to encourage all of the members to ***“Snatch people from the fire and save them..” (Jude 23)***

- **We need to teach the whole council/will of God. And to be aware of the wolves.** The leaders and congregants need to focus on being strong in doctrine. This includes training/grounding the new converts. **(Hebrews 5:11-14)** The church needs to be strong in the Word, so as to be aware of false teachers **(Matthew 7:15-16)** who creep in and devour the flock. When it comes to such people we need to be spiritually wise in our discernment. While on earth doing outreach and mentorship, Jesus said to the disciples (before sending them out to do evangelism), ***“I am sending you out like sheep among wolves. Therefore, be as shrewd as serpents and as harmless as doves.” (Matthew 10:16)***

We need to be ***“as wise serpents”*** in our interaction with false teachers. And spiritually speaking, seek to be as ***“harmless as doves”*** so as to not cause

spiritual harm to the flock or to others in our struggle against the Enemy. We need to understand that Satan and his messengers are clever and that they aim to appear good and wholesome. The devil is sly. Satan himself

***“masquerades as an angel of light; (and his teachers) masquerade as servants of righteousness” (2 Corinthians 11:13-15)***

Paul shared the who council/will of God (to Biblically ground the church in Ephesus). This Apostle warned the leaders to be on guard against false teacher. **(Acts 20:27;29-31)** He later wrote to the Ephesians and admonished them to be rooted in Christ and in the truth, so as to not be swayed by every wind of false doctrine. **(Ephesians 4:12-16)**. This church listened to the inspired writings of Paul and followed God’s command.

Many years later Paul, and the Apostles, were martyred. Only John was left. In the final book of the Bible John writes the Ephesians. He praises them for resisting the false teachings/teachers that came into the church in Ephesus. **(Revelation 2:1-3)**

***Brethren, it does us no good to grow a church, if it’s going to be divided within by false teaching. Evangelism must go hand in hand with strong doctrinal teaching, (within the church and in Bible class training)***

False teachers manipulate and can captivate whole households. **(2 Timothy 3:6-9)** Their teaching spreads like gangrene and rot. Be careful of such people. If they are unrepented, and continually practice sin, warn others about these people by name. **(2 Timothy 2:15;16-18)**

If they don’t repent of false teaching, after we have talk with them, by ***“speaking the truth in love,” (Ephesians 4:15)*** we are to go the extra step and bring this issue (of sin) before other church members. If this false teacher still does not repent, then we are to bring this sin before the church. If even after the church (leaders/eldership) addresses this problem and still the false

teacher continues to sin, we are to remove such a person from the church. **(Matthew 18:15-17)** We must remove them, quickly, for such yeast, (sin) leavens (corrupts) the whole lump, (the body of Christ/the church). **(1 Corinthians 5:7-13)**

We must separate ourselves from those the church marks. **“We are to have no fellowship with the unfruitful deeds of darkness, but rather we are to expose such deeds.” (Ephesians 5:11)** We need to encourage the church members to follow the Bible and not associate with such false teachers. **(Romans 16:17-20)** When it comes to false teachers, please know that I am not talking about someone saying something stupid in Bible class.

Or believing in some ridiculous idea. Please understand what I am writing here. I am talking about people who are actively, willfully, (with an agenda) promoting false doctrine and refuse to stop their practice, even after they are approached and corrected, and yet still refuse to change.

-----  
**Personal story:** *I’ve had much heartbreak from false teachers. I have many old scares that remain raw even to this day, after over a decade. I knew of a church who hired a young affable preacher, with a ready smile. The elders thoughtfully wanted to give this beginning minister a chance, even though he was untested and inexperienced, as a teacher and worker in the church. This man was starting out in his ministry and was green. When the elders interviewed him, he said all the right things, and agreed with the leaders on the key doctrinal points.*

*This person, however, regrettably had an agenda. This young man was sneaky, much of what he taught in matters of false doctrine, he did where the elders would not see. When this preacher began teaching the young children in Sunday School, he turned the kids against the themes of “Bible authority” and “the one true church.” He also discounted the 7 days of creation, as a myth. Sadly, these little children quit coming to worship after that. What does the Bible say about the seriousness of causing a little one to fall? “If anyone causes one of these little ones who believe in me to stumble, it would be better if a millstone was tied around his neck, and he be cast into the sea.” (Matthew 18:6)*

*This man would privately invite young college age people, over to his house for Bible studies and there promote denominational teachings like premillennialism. A young girl was shocked when she came to his study. She felt like her trust in him had been betrayed. This young lady (in tears) shared what happened with her parents. This preacher was called before the elders, and as false teachers tend to do, he'd deny teaching such doctrine. From my experience most false teachers are deceitful. And are good actors. That was the case with this preacher. Being unrepented, this false preacher went behind the scenes to undermine the authority of the elders and the doctrinal teachings they were sharing at church.*

*When this young preacher was finally fired, (after 2 years of such behavior) after the elders dragged their feet for over a year, (once learning about this issue) this man had managed corrupt/recruit most of the young people to either accept his doctrines or to support him, (out of friendship). When this false teacher finally left, he took most of the young people, (the 20 something's and 30 something's) with him. Almost all the young families and kids left with this man. The church is now a heartbeat away from closing. The division created a huge loss in membership. Most of the people there now are elderly.*

*This false teacher caused someone who was like a son to me, to leave the faith. He alienated friends and family from many of the church members. The elders refused to mark him and so instead of people in the area (in the surrounding churches) taking warning of his ways, this false teacher has been slandering the eldership, for unjustly letting him go. He's also been slandering me, (for I too, like the elders opposed his false doctrines, such as faith/grace only, truth relativism, social justice, Biblical fallibility, promoting denominationalism, premillennialism, etc.)*

*The groundwork for this young false preacher was established by the last preacher who was there for over a decade. This older gentlemen wanted to be an entertainer. Sadly, 80 percent of the sermon and Bible class lesson material that he taught was secular in nature ranging from quotes, poems, antidotes, short stories, jokes, to science, politics, and cultural news, etc. This preacher wanted to be liked and thought his (watered down) content would make him more popular. This older man dumped down the congregation, which helped to create a spiritually weak group, (in matters of the truth). This lack of strong doctrinal preaching/teaching created the perfect opening for the next preacher (false teacher) that was hired to come to this church*

---

***Another theme that needs to be taught and practiced within the church...***

### **Step Six – A growing church has caring members.**

A loving group is shown by how each member treats others. Christians need to be strong in individual Christian hospitality. **(1 Peter 4:9)** A loveless group of believers will hurt kingdom work. **(Galatians 5:15)** Saints need to be strong in congregational attendance/love/encouragement. **(Hebrews 10:24-27)** A loveless church will soon be a dead church. For if we don't love our brothers, we can't love God. **(1 John 4:20)** And if we don't love God, the Lord ceases to spiritually view such a body as His church. **(Revelation 2:4-5)** for the "lampstand"/the "church" will be removed. **(Revelation 1:20)**

A group that is not invested in meeting together to encourage, strengthen, and support one another will have poor attendance. A loveless church will have most of its members attending in a faithless manner. Such irregular support from the church members will encourage stagnation, apathy, and indifference in other members as well as in new converts.

The Bible emphasizes this concept in **Hebrews 10:24** ***"and let us consider one another to provoke unto love and good works; 25 not forsaking our own assembling together, as the custom of some is, but exhorting one another; and so much the more, as ye see the day drawing nigh."***



Besides encouraging people to attend, we need to help each member develop and grow. A wise church uses its members within the body in acts of worship and service, (as well as outside of church). Using saints and new converts helps these members to grow spiritually. This action also helps these members of Gods family feel included/like they belong. God expects His people to be used. For each member has their part to play. **(Romans 12:3-8)**

Sin can destroy Gods church body, like cancer does a humans body. Unrepented actions of wicked behavior can encourage the same actions in other saints. We need to “remove the leaven” that corrupts the body. **(1 Corinthians 5:1-12)**

(Especially false teachers who create division, factions within the church and end up destroying souls. **(Acts 20:28-31)** Real love speaks up. And warns others of danger.

---



**There are four areas a new church must do to grow.**

*(Growth goals are numerical and spiritual)*

### **1. ATTRACTING lost people within our community**

*We can do this through active/regular evangelism work within the church, within church groups and within individual actions. See my **"Journal"** document for details/ways to go about this. This Journal material is also listed at my evangelism website [www.churchofchristevangelism.com](http://www.churchofchristevangelism.com)*

---

## 2. ASSIMILATING new people Into our CHURCH community

*We can do this through putting them to work within the church and without by getting these people involved in spiritual activities. Also, through including the new people in venues that lets them know they are loved. Such venues can include potlucks, Christian hospitality, Bible study/devotional gatherings. More details within the ["Journal."](#)*

---

## 3. ASSIMILATING people into the Bible truths, beliefs, values, and story

*We can do this through grounding new church members, especially new converts in foundational training studies, we help them to assimilate into the Bibles truth, beliefs, values, and story. Grounding teachings can include such themes as Bible authority, church worship, the Christian walk, doing evangelism, etc. The stories within the Word, can show narration that highlights our roles as God's children. We can hear of the story of Jesus' sacrifice for our salvation, and how grace plays a role in our lives as we live gratefully for God, in proclaiming the good news. Doctrinal themes mold a church, but so do Bible stories.*

***New convert classes:*** *Retention of new souls within the kingdom is connected with regular training classes within the Word of God. New convert grounding classes should be done each week. A good general rule of thumb is to study with new converts for at least 2 years. I have had an 80 percent retention rate with new converts through doing this training process. I prefer to do group Bible studies with the new converts in church people's homes. This gives the new converts a chance to get to know other saints better as well as to feel a sense of belonging/love that such hospitality can bring. For more details, see my [evangelism strategy page](#) and my document file called, ["Journal."](#)*

---

*Visit my website links here for new convert training Bible lessons.*

**Site one: My new convert training materials**

[www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/church-of-christ-evangelism---free-material-store-page.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/church-of-christ-evangelism---free-material-store-page.html)

[www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-free-bible-study-lessons.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-free-bible-study-lessons.html)

**Site two: Other people's new convert training materials**

[www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/useful-evangelism-resources.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/useful-evangelism-resources.html)

---

#### **4. ACTIVATING our people into GOD'S MISSION**

*This can be done through you/others getting evangelism training classes going, (within the church and without). The leaders within the church need to aim to have sermons and lessons regularly taught on Bible evangelism themes. Such themes need to emphasize our moral responsibility in doing the work God has assigned of us, in reaching the lost. The evangelism teaching also needs to teach people how to do outreach. We need to highlight step by step methods.*

*We also need to share Bible stories of soul winners. Such stories will give people examples to model after. Such stories can motivate God's to be more personally accountable in following inspired examples of the prophets, Apostles, and of our Lord. Stories also help give new ideas for doing outreach.*

***To grow a newly planted church, evangelism must become part of the congregation's culture. Outreach must be taught and practiced.***

---

### **Evangelism training resources:**

To learn more about creating a culture in evangelism please see the ***"Journal."*** and the ***"Evangelism Template"*** article below for details/more ideas on this topic.

I encourage you to also look at the ***"strategy"*** page here for more data on this topic. [www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-evangelism-strategy.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-evangelism-strategy.html)

You may find the concepts from my Tampa, Florida, **evangelism group** to be helpful. [www.evangelismworkersoftampabay.com](http://www.evangelismworkersoftampabay.com)

**Note:** When you look at my evangelism group and the things we are doing, please know that you don't have to do everything or even anything I am doing, in matters of outreach. A website is definitely optional. But you may find, in your church planting efforts, that many of the concepts I share on this evangelism training group forum are worth studying. You may find certain content to be helpful. In my group we are covering all the major outreach methods.

As well as many workshop training lessons and Bible study materials. A group does not have to do all these things to be successful. They can just use one method, focus on one (soul saving) Bible lessons book, etc. I'm choosing to teach a wide range of content, to give the students a variety of options. But that is a personal choice. Pick and choose what you like from my online platform.

---

**Below is a planting church template for church growth.**

**And the Evangelism "Journal" booklet.**

**I've also include a personal dedication to my father.**

---

## Evangelism growth template:

**Creating an evangelism culture and a supportive growth dynamic stratagem plan for a congregation.**

---

### Main themes:

1. Create an evangelism culture.
  2. Prepare the church for visitors/Bible studies and new converts.
  3. Retain visitors/contacts/new converts.
  4. Foster mentorship work with members: Creating leaders in outreach.
- 

### Spiritual Goals:

1. Grow the church in numbers.
  2. Save the lost souls in this world.
  3. Teach others to be leaders, mentors, and soul winners in evangelism.
  4. 7 year plan double size of the congregation.
  5. Create an evangelism culture within the church that lasts.
- 

## Evangelism growth church template

**(For spiritual growth and physical numerical growth)**

*These are to be done in stages and over time. These ideas may look overwhelming. But the implementations are meant to be digested and done over a span of time. Years of content/investment is detailed in these few pages. And it will take time to do each of the mentioned stages.*

---

## Stage one: Groundwork/setting foundations –

### Focusing on a loving, inclusive, friendly environment.

#### 1. Preparing church members for Christian and (especially) non-Christian visitors

- **Interacting with people from the community:** We need to encourage the saints to focus on visitors, new converts, new church members and the spiritually weak/discouraged, before greeting their close friends in worship. You may have had this experience, (while on a business or vacation trip) your walking into a different congregation, and everyone is chatting in their social circles while you and your family are ignored. You might have an elderly couple come up and rebuke you for sitting in their spot, then walk away. This happens to often in churches that profess to have the selfless love of God.

As you know, the Lord's church is not a social club for satisfying our self-interests, it's a place for Christians to follow the teachings of the Bible, to show agape love, to encourage the disheartened, help the weak, (1 Thessalonians 5:14). We assemble to "consider the other" for ways of stir up God's people for love and good deeds. We assemble to exhort and encourage the saints, as we love one another (Hebrews 10:24-25). If we only love our buddies and cliques what are we doing more then the pagans? (Matthew 5:46-47)

As you can tell this is a personal issue for me. *I've seen churches die and this could have been prevented.* I've seen church members lament that their congregation is getting smaller AND YET they ignore the visitors...The very people who can be added to a congregation for spiritual and numerical growth. I've seen new converts, and my family members treated poorly when visiting other churches, even while prayers, sermons and songs are sung about sacrifice, love, and compassion. This is why I am writing this as passionately as I am. *Churches grow when love, truth and evangelism are applied. They die when these themes are ignored.*

### Ways of conveying NT themes of Bible based love.

- **Greeting visitors first** ("the 5-minute rule"/first 5 minutes look for visitors to meet and greet). In the spirit of welcoming people, it would be good *to talk with and sit down with the visitors during worship. And to encourage members and have assigned greeters at the doors when people enter and leave. Such activities will help create a culture of selfless interaction with visitors. This behavior will benefit the interactive dynamic with*

*all of the church members. These themes (of selflessly focusing on others before ones friends) can and should also be applied to new members, new converts, the elderly/young, the discouraged/spiritually struggling church members.*

- **Arriving early:** 1-2 people need to arrive to church 15-20 minutes early. Nothing discourages a non-Christian, a excited new convert or saint more then arriving early at a church, interested/eager for worship and seeing the church building with its lights off and no one there. Some contacts will leave when the church looks like a ghost town. Early arrivals can greet them instead of these contacts waiting in the car in the dark parking lot.
- **Hospitality:** Have duty assigned to members to be hospitable to visitors. And exhort all church members to actively follow this NT teaching, (Hebrews 13:2). Sermons and lessons should (from time to time) focus on this important Bible activity of showing kindness and love. Truth grounds the new convert, love helps them know the truth is being lived. Visitors, new convert are more impressed by seeing this living example of care, concern, and interest, then by a sermon or prayer on love. For they are seeing a selfless sacrificial example (through hospitality). (Romans 12:13; 1 Peter 4:9; 1 Timothy 3:2). When the love of God is shown in such a warm, caring work as hospitality, positive impressions are made about the members/church. Bonds are formed, people are influenced to get to know these thoughtful/selfless saints, by this simple act of inviting someone into a home or a restaurant.

*Retention of new converts comes through grounding them in the truth, (growing in knowledge) including them in worship (helping them to apply that knowledge to feel included/emotionally invested in His work) and in showing them the love of God, to build ties of spirit and bonds of brotherhood. Examples are powerful the more people do such activities the more others will join, including the new converts.*

- **Have sermons or lessons** devoted to the Bible theme of **selfless/serving love** and **hospitality once a month**. Consistent reminders help instill and reinforce cultural changes in a congregation.
- **Make new converts and new members included in church worship/spiritual activities ASAP.** Retention of members and especially new converts is strengthened through inclusion. Get their information out there for church members to be able to contact them as soon as possible. Add them to the directory immediately.
- **Hospitality/inclusion for all members:** have a potluck once a month for members/visitors/new converts/new members to get to know each other.



---

## Stage two: Groundwork/setting foundation –

### Soul winning preparations for visitors and outside work.

*(Note stage one and stage two can be started at the same time).*

#### 1. Equipping church members to be Bible teachers/leaders.

- A. **Have teacher training classes** (at homes or coffee shops/restaurants). Have each student (in the class) teach a (evangelism) soul winning lesson. By doing this the church member will acclimate/grow in teaching and will get familiar with the Bible themes of soul saving, as well as non-Christian/new convert Bible lesson materials.
- B. **Preteens, teens, will be trained to teach.** The young people will be encouraged to invite their friends to hear their Bible teachings, (in church classes). This will create teachers, leaders, perhaps future preachers as well as evangelists. For more details see **church growth example from Bill Sanchez** [\*from "Journal" pg. 18-20.\*](#)

**Look for leadership roles for our kids:** We can give our young people assignments as "greeters" and the little ones as door openers for the elderly, visitors, and church members. We can look for ways to give them roles for development as future *selfless* leaders. Note: having them pass out the bulletin is a great idea.

- C. **Support individual members** who create groups for evangelism work/evangelism teaching. A strong church supports/incorporates individual activities of evangelism as well as church focused ones. Support through, announcements, encouragement, etc.

---

## Stage three: Creating an invite culture where evangelism work begins

### – *Creating an evangelism culture in the church.*

1. Training/mentoring God's people to be evangelists. Creating a climate/culture of mentoring each other in spiritual themes.
  - **For preachers/teachers/elders: Evangelism needs to be regularly taught (at least twice a month) for the themes of such NT work to seep into the churches culture.** Such reminders reinforce, mold, and strengthen the convictions of the church cultural in the seriousness of doing outreach. **Note this practice should be started with Stage one.**
  - **Getting them to reflect:** The goal of what we are doing is to get people to introspectively ask this question, *“do I care about the lost?”* And *“how much do I care those going to hell?”* This thought can be stirred up simply by asking this question or by inferencing this idea, in different formats of worship, in prayer, Bible classes, sermons, workshops, through the bulletin, etc. *When it gets personal for people, they will act.*
  - A. **Stage one: establish the “why.”** Before you introduce a church, to methods, (in lessons and sermons) we need to first introduce them to the reasons why we need to do evangelism (**examples like:** it's our moral responsibility, the consequences of the lost going to hell, sharing what Jesus did for us and what He wants us to do for others, I share gospel so others can have heaven/relationship with Christ, etc.) We can share the benefits of evangelism (morale strengthened, souls saved, church growing, leaders being made, NT command followed, etc.) and the bad effects of not doing outreach.

More ideas of themes to share on strategy page

<https://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-evangelism-strategy.html>

**Max Dawson** (in growing church examples) gives some thoughts that have emphasized the need for evangelism. His framing of ideas, on why we need to do evangelism, has helped create a climate of growth. Max says, (from scripture) that we are saved to save. That is our spiritual purpose. *For more details, See “Journal” page 5-9*

- **Other themes (to teach/preach) on evangelism to establish the “why.”**  
**The importance of soul saving NT examples (especially inspired ones):**  
 This is also a time to share the examples of those God has taught us to follow, (that do soul saving work). We read of outreach in the NT stories of the Messiah Jesus, the inspired Apostles, and the examples from the Holy Spirit guided disciples in the book of Acts. Sharing these stories of such people can highlight the right examples and the expectations God has

for His people, as evangelism workers. OT examples can be shared too. **These examples highlight more reasons why we should share Jesus.**

*Emphasizing such work as our responsibility and highlighting the details of these stories and how they apply to us today, is powerful.* Stories will have methods in them, to share, but the main focus when first introducing these themes is how we as Christians should follow our Exemplar, Jesus Christ and those directed by God's Holy Spirit. Such examples highlight our own responsibilities in sharing the Word. Soul saving needs to be shared as part of our moral responsibility as Christians. Methods can come later...

- B. Stage two: Establish the “how”** Giving themes on why we need to do evangelism, prepares the way. A few months of preparation, through teaching evangelism themes in classes and in sermons as well as in singing songs on these themes, giving prayer (especially during a singing/prayer service) on this topic, and mentioning such work in announcements, *gets the church ready for “how” we can do evangelism.*

**Creating an invite culture through training:** Have a Bible class at church on inviting people to a Bible study or to worship. The lesson book by Benjamin Lee [“It’s Not Rocket Science,”](#) is great for this. **Benjamin Lee** has been growing the church where he works at as a preacher. He is one of the successful growing church examples I will mention. [See “Journal” page 3-4](#)

**When the church members are taught this content, they will be encouraged to invite a certain number to church or a Bible study, we will have set up.** The first/second month, (invite at least 2) and slowly increase that number as time goes by. Example: third/forth month (invite at least 4). Fifth/sixth month (invite at least 6). And from there to encourage them to be consistent in doing His work in consistent inviting. The more they do this the easier it will become. And the more natural it will become. The members will start inviting more and more people, as they adapt to this process. The goal is to get people active in inviting others and to support them in their activities. As part of doing this, church members should be encouraged to invite church visitors to Bible studies. If the groundwork has been laid for creating a climate of evangelistic interest through sermons, lessons, etc. then this should naturally begin to take place.

**Note:** The book I mentioned above is helpful. Yet you can create an invite culture by, regularly teaching evangelism concepts in Bible class and in sermons. Initially focus on having classes that deal with Bible lessons on evangelism. The teachings need to address the importance of doing outreach. Sermons should be given 1-2 each month should also focus on this evangelism theme.

**Themes:** Teachings are best first addressed in outlining Bible stories of evangelism. The methods are best introduced later, after the reasons why we are supposed to do evangelism have been covered. Once you center teaching themes around Bible examples of people doing outreach. You can also share the moral teachings that God has outlined for us in our

lives. Sharing Bible lessons on our personal responsibility for doing evangelism. You can address (best done in Bible class via asking students questions) the “whys” people struggle with in doing outreach. And also, outline the positive benefits when we do outreach, like people are saved, church growing, etc.

The goal (in regularly introducing evangelism themes) is to get people to begin to regularly think about evangelism and to get them to reflect on their need of doing this activity in their life. Once people have been introduced to these concepts, they should be encouraged in lessons and sermons to share Jesus and invite people to church/Bible studies. Invitational material should be supplied and should be easy to access. Ongoing Christian Bible studies should be taking place, for saints who are wanting to invite others to a Bible study group. And greeters should be ready, for when non-Christian visitors come to church.

*Creating an “invite culture” comes from regular Bible teaching on evangelism and emphasizing the importance of sharing Jesus with others. And by having structured venues for helping the congregation invite others, (like having a willing preacher helping with a study, church member Bible study groups set up, material available for passing out and for people to use in Bible studies, etc.)*

- **Max Dawson** church growth example (for inviting people) can be shared with this lesson book. [See “Journal” page 5-9](#)
  - Another fantastic **example** that can be shared in this class when teaching this book is from **Brother Flores**. He shares an **evangelism culture** method that creates an evangelism culture in *the growing church* section of the “**Journal**” recordings. **JP Flores** has created an evangelism culture, [visit “Journal” page 27-31](#) to learn more.
  - During this phase, if not sooner, we need to... **Have evangelism material always accessible for the church members**: Make business invitation cards for Bible studies and for church worship. Have them in a visible/accessible place. Have Bible study lesson materials for non-Christians/new converts always available (in a visible/easy to access place) at the church building. *When we start training people to share Christ, we need to make sure we have materials to help them in this work.*
- **Having Bible studies with people you just meet**: *Once the church has gotten comfortable with inviting people, we’ll go over Jon Rowe’s method “Journal” page 32 and later we’ll go over the method called “One Shot” approach. These methods can be used when people have built up to the level to be ready to do so. Doing invites and evangelism events will help bring people to that level. See our evangelism group [training page](#) to learn more about these approaches. **These will teach people how to have live Bible studies and Bible discussions.***
- **Cyber evangelism**: During this time, I’ll run search engine and social media evangelism ads for Bible study invites and for the church (to get visitors). To learn more [visit Journal page 16-17;27-31](#) to learn more and see [strategy evangelism page](#). I’ll mentor interested parties at church to create, manage, and run such virtual tools. This is an excellent resource to learn. Having a training group class on this is important.

### C. More grounding/training lessons on evangelism.

**Book 2: Showing the serious need of kingdom growth/second class.** The lesson book by Joseph Sullivan, [“Save a church from dying.”](#) Though this book is more of a “why” book than a “how” book, it seems more fitting to share this after book 1.

**Book 3: Detailing Bible based ideas of what growing churches are doing in third class.** The recorded material is from a wide range of soul winners who as church workers are growing their congregations.

The material is my journal of people I’ve been recording, so it’s called “**Journal.**” Seems to fit, since I have been journaling/recording what I have learned. These ideas can help generate more ideas from the church members and also teach them things they can better do to grow the congregation. The journal content is included.

**More evangelism books can be added later...**

- **Making sure all are instructed:** When **new members/converts join church, they are taught the books** in a smaller class at home, etc. Church members (when ready) will be encouraged to teach one of the lessons for the (first, second and third) books taught.

### D. Strengthening/reinforcing the longevity of the evangelism culture:

- Have **accountability reminders** in announcements, prayers, sermon(s), bulletin in connection to this topic, (of soul saving). Ask the congregation to spend time each day to carefully give thought in this work, to pray for opportunities. Prayer is powerful and this action helps get the members in the right mind frame/attitude (in responsibility) for soul saving.

**The mindset: Have consistent reminders when teaching on the importance of outreach.** The evangelism Bible lessons/sermons will create passion that will help spur the church members to meet people. As saints invite others they will help get over the fear of rejection. By getting out of the comfort zone, they will acclimate to doing outreach confidently. Once they acclimate and get used to this, it will become natural. When the church members make evangelism a spiritual goal and mission, and a part of their life, they will grow.

- 
- **Create a unity vision: At the end of a Bible class series on evangelism, create a mission statement.** For an evangelism class have a large/firm poster sized paper ready, ask everyone to sign what they want to accomplish in the aspects of evangelism. Have the poster have their mission statement of what they want to become as evangelists. Have them

also sign what they want to achieve in evangelism work. Have them sign their full name next to their written goal. This creates investment and unifying bonds with others in this work.

**For teacher:** When all the class has done this, compliment them for their desire to serve God in outreach and have each member read what they wrote and praise them afterward, on the ideals they put down on the board. Companies have their staff members put down into words their personal goals and expectations on how they want to improve the company, onto a large company board. They do this to get their members (emotionally) invested in the corporate business. This helps the members be invested in improving the business. They then have this board placed in view where the staff can view it.

When the evangelism church group has signed its mission statement. Have this signed poster placed out in the church where everyone can see it. Also, give each person a copy and text them a copy. Ask them to keep this in a place where they can go to for visiting their mission statement. And to read the team's mission statements.

Regularly encourage the church members, (through announcements, church bulletin, etc.) to read (at home) their statement at least once weekly. Writing the statement is an investment, reading it, again and again, is also a reminder of that investment. Reading one's evangelism team's statements also creates a bond and feeling of unity, within the group. Have the mission statement chart framed in the church for the members to see each time they come in. And encourage new members to sign the mission statement chart, after they finished a new evangelism class.

- 
- **Throughout the year keep the congregation aware of the need for evangelism.**

**Teach at least 2 sermon or Bible classes each month on evangelism themes,** (examples OT/NT Bible examples, our moral responsibility, the seriousness of hell, the need to share Jesus' sacrifice, the wonders of heaven - how can we keep this to ourselves, the decline of churches due to evangelism neglect.

**Another topic that can be covered: Evangelism sermons on mentorship,** can help stir people up for active interaction with others. Bible themes can be shared of such examples as Jesus mentoring the 12 Apostles, and 72 disciples, as well as Paul mentoring Titus, Silas, Timothy, etc. Nehemiah as a leader worked with Israel to rebuild the wall of Jerusalem and tying that in for how we need to work for God's spiritual kingdom, (in rebuilding/strengthening His walls.) For more thoughts on mentorship, see the strategy page.

[www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-evangelism-strategy.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-evangelism-strategy.html)

Also, we can share lessons on the need to spiritually reproduce, that evangelism is in our spiritual DNA, see **Max Dawson** church growing example. [See "Journal" page 5-9](#)

Besides this, it would be good to **Teach an evangelism lesson series**/plan (book) at least once each year for Bible class.

- **Leadership support:** To foster an evangelism culture, promote these concepts regularly. And back up what is being said with actions. All the sermons, Bible lessons, and announcements on outreach themes can be undermined if a church senses a leadership does not care. Examples are powerful for both good or ill.
- **Remember prayer:** Get your church congregation to pray for this work your congregation is focusing on. When members from church meet up as groups, have them pray for this effort. Mention specific goals and aims the church has for evangelism. Prayer helps center the minds of the saints on this purpose and it beseeches God for aid in this work. Let prayer for outreach always be intertwined with the church worship and the group meetings of its members.

Let prayer be a part of the work before an event begins and after it ends. Let this behavior be encouraged by the leaders. Let them exhort the members to make prayer (for evangelism) be a part of their daily lives. Let such prayers be encouraged by preachers/evangelists/elders. Let them motivate the saints to regularly pray for evangelism development/growth, for soul-saving opportunities, and to talk with *God on concerns and interests they have on this subject*.

---

## Stage four: Have Bible studies ready for non-Christian and new converts (long term) in evangelism work –

### Keeping the church growing and the saved from following away

1. **Having the congregation ready and prepared to bringing in the harvest.**  
Once the congregation is ready for contacts to come, we'll focus on generating visitors from the community.
  - A. **Contacts will be generated through inviting others to church/Bible studies.** The church class lessons will lay the groundwork for doing this.

**Bible study places:** When we have contacts: Bible studies can be set up at houses, church building during services (for new converts) coffee shops, restaurants like Panera Bread, Village Inn, etc. As well as possibly having studies at libraries. Note: having people in one's

home is powerful, such hospitality shared with students really leave an impression on others. They feel a sense of family, love in such gatherings. Those who invite another to a study, can either teach a class, or have another member teach or have the preacher/elder teach.

- B. **Church visitors:** When people visit the church: During the “**5 minute rule**,” encourage the saints to **invite visitors to sign our visitor cards**. We want the members to personally, greet the visitors, talk with them, then warmly invite/hand them a card to sign. During potluck meetings, have church visitor/contact information available for members to sign special “thank you” note cards for visiting us. We want to have groups established and people trained to teach. We want church members to invite others. See church growth example **Rick Billingsley** [See page 11-13](#)

We also want to invite our visitors to hospitality, see church growth example **Shane Scott** [See page 2](#) **Ethan Longhenry** [See page 4](#) and **Ricky Shanks** [See page 14-15](#)

As well as to Bible studies. See church growth example **Andy Cantrell** [See page 9-10](#)

- C. **Contacts will also be generated through cyber/social media evangelism** (inviting people to sign up for Bible studies and inviting people.

See cyber evangelism success church growth examples from **JP Flores** [See page 27-31](#) and **Don Bunting** [See page 16-17](#)

---

## Stage five: Retention of new converts.

- A. **We'll need to have new convert classes.** The goal for a new convert is to be trained for 2-3 years. This helps with retention. The goal of the classes are twofold. I want to train saints on how to do studies with the new Christians. So, the Bible study classes will also focus on equipping members to teach.
- B. The leadership and church members will be encouraged to **invest in the new converts**. The **retention rate goes up** when new Christians **are used in worship and outside of worship in spiritual activities**. We want them to feel like they belong and that they are valued. Using them and equipping them in God's work goes a long way to accomplish this purpose. *The goal will be for the new converts to be trained as teachers and in the work of evangelism, as well.*
- C. **Hospitality** shown by individual members and in church member groups (potlucks) helps solidify (the concept of family for) the new converts. Love, inclusion, spiritual support, and



encouragement is essential for new converts as well as for all saints. *A loveless church is a dead church.* We need to have regular monthly lessons to remind/encourage people to focus on this issue. When a church group meets, it will also give out leadership assignments to help encourage members to focus on specific goals related to this theme, (like inviting a new member out to eat, including a new Christian in a spiritual event, etc.).

---

## In a nutshell

A. **Step one:** First (*for the first 2 months*) we introduce the importance of outreach in sharing themes in sermons, lessons, announcements, bulletin, prayers on evangelism, to put that out there into the church culture. We focus on making the church ready to greet/befriend visitors.

B. **Step two:** We create handouts for members to give, we set up a Bible class and have willing church leaders (elders/preachers) ready to teach others. We create classes to train others to be teachers. We teach evangelism (church/Bible study invite) method book in Sunday/Wednesday services. Once done, we'll go onto 2 other evangelism books.

- 
- **For more details on the above content, please see my evangelism strategy page.**  
[www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-evangelism-strategy.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/my-evangelism-strategy.html)
  - **For more information on my books and training materials please see the following website link.** [www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/church-of-christ-evangelism---free-material-store-page.html](http://www.churchofchriststreetcampusevangelism.com/church-of-christ-evangelism---free-material-store-page.html)
- 

## Final words:

*When it comes to evangelism, I try to pace myself. Consistent work needs to be spaced each week with periods of consistent rest. Rest is important to avoid burnout. Consistent work leads to consistent results over time. But rest must be scheduled each week to help the body, mind, heart, recharge.*

*Finding patterns of success through trial and error comes with time. Find patterns of success through those who have paved the road for you. Those trail blazers will make much of your work easier. But there will still be learning curves, that you will discover and grow from.*

*The investment you make today (in your work and learning) will pave the road tomorrow for easier walking, (for those you mentor).*

*As you begin doing evangelism, you will find it becomes easier with time. The mental and emotional drain will become less, the struggle to find answers (in different situations) will become easier, as you adapt more and more to the outreach work in teaching and new convert studies.*

**Seek motivation:** *go online on your computer or digital device and seek music, videos, audio files, pictures, that spiritually inspire you and give you encouragement. I personally like listening to hymns and audio sermons. As well as motivational videos. Find what fits with you. Such items can also come in physical form, ranging from books, pictures, written down motivational scripture, articles, etc. Find things that will inspire you and help you grow. Always be hungry, always be searching.*

**Seek a tribe:** *Look for people who resonate with you. Find folks to add to your tribe. Find people to feed off of (for encouragement, growth, spiritual nourishment) and who can feed off of you. Find those who support you and nourish you, spiritually. Paul had Timothy and Titus. You may find such people near where you live, or you may find them on social media, etc. Look for evangelists, who will bless you and refresh you.*

**Create a support system:** *As you save others, train them to save. Mentoring others in the short term helps you in your work, in the long-term. As you serve, encourage others in the church to help you, in evangelism. Mold people and invest in mentoring them. This takes time but is worth the effort.*

*It pays dividends in emotional, mental, and physical support down the road. Seek to surround yourself with people who will help you. You need people in your life that are further along than you, people that have a bigger vision, people that are more experienced, people that are more spiritually developed. You need to be exposed to new levels so that you can go to new levels!*

*You're on fire for God. I value your zeal. I am thankful to know soldiers like you in the world. You are rare and you are appreciated. May God bless you and make His face shine upon you.*

*Joseph Sullivan*

**This book (Discipleship for King Jesus) is dedicated to my dad, who embodied what it meant to be a mentor:**

*My father (Bill Sullivan) is the finest man I know, next to Jesus. I am proud to know him. I hope to be as loving, forgiving, and wise a father as my dad has been to me, (throughout my life).*

*This (first) picture is of a group of new converts dad taught. Many of them, he has trained (grounded) in the Word for many years. Dad is the man on the far left, with the green shirt. I'm proud to know dad. He's done door-knocking with me, studied with contacts, and has helped with baptisms... and has done so much more for the kingdom.*

*Bill was an elder for almost 20 years. He taught Bible classes for saints throughout the week and regularly led God's people in God's (Bible-based) work. Bill was a soft-spoken man. He had a tender heart for the lost and for those who are suffering in the kingdom.*

*I'm the evangelist I am today because of dad. I'm grateful to have had him in my life. I look forward to seeing him in Heaven...someday.*

*Dad passed away on Friday, September 29th, 2023, at the age of 75.  
You are loved and will be greatly missed.*

*- Joseph Sullivan*





---

# Journal

---



## **Journal: (for recording evangelism info)**

*This evangelism resource is meant to be a journal for personal reflection and recording. The material I have put inside is designed as content to consider using as evangelism, "game plans." The resources within this document are here to help with incorporating evangelism strategies. This material I have put together will include soul-saving tips from successful Evangelists from around the United States. I'll share the names of said Evangelists and their sources from my collected data.*

*I'd encourage those who want to become well-versed in evangelism and who want to find "success patterns" to emulate the patterns and study the material I have placed in this document. I also encourage you to add your own thoughts, experiences, work, tips, methods, etc., as you do your work. This document file can be used as a journal and can be a useful sounding board for your thoughts. As time goes by, you can place your own "success patterns" to pass on to others. Let this journal be a way to learn. As you grow, share what you've learned with others. Feel free to delete, remove, edit, and add to this "evangelism strategy journal."*

---

## **Journal content:**

This material has stratagems to look over/review for church work implementation. Many of the concepts can be applied to individuals as well. This is an excellent resource for church members, leaders, preachers, to promote for congregational growth. The recorded data of church growth templates are from my "Journal" file.

---

## **Section One:**

*The first success patterns I will show, came from my studies of the following content...*

**Resource: From the interview video series:**

**"Leading Others to Christ" by Dan Barker and Matt Maudlin**

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org>

*Note: I highly recommend this series. I encourage you to watch the videos for more info... this material just touches the top of this iceberg. There are other videos I've not covered in this Journal, as well. The content I put together was made chiefly with learning curves I wanted to cover in doing outreach work. This video platform has new videos coming out and is the best forum I have found for my evangelism studies. It's worth checking out. :)*

## Shane Scott

### *How he gets Bible studies:*

1. Shane, scans visitor cards and sends them via online email as well as by post on the church website to leaders/workgroups to share with church members. They write "thank you" (for visiting) cards. If the church gets a second visit, then Shane or others will say "Hey \_\_\_\_\_ I just want to thank you for coming to be with us, and I just want to let you know, if you have any questions I'd be happy to sit down and answer your questions. And I'd love to sit down and study sometimes."

Tips: When you meet someone at church, try to introduce that person to someone else as well. Help the contact create connections. Connections are important in helping to cement someone into a congregation. Find hobbies or social groups to help with building relationships and connections, (with the outside world). As time progresses invite those connections/people to church or to a Bible study.

Shane also tries to incorporate the college people into teaching. He tries to get all of them into teaching (some form of age group) in the classes at church. He believes a church that invests in its members will retain those that are invested in. People are more inclined to invest in the church in energy, emotion, time, commitment, when they feel valued and appreciated. Being used (in and outside of service) in spiritual roles helps with generating loyal feelings and beliefs. Using people is the best way to get someone invested, whether it is in using a new convert, a new member, or college student, etc.

Hospitality shown to individual members, as well as to others through doing group meetings in people's homes and through potlucks....can also help people get to know each other, (especially in large congregations).

This is important. Building emotional connections is foundational in getting long term congregational retention and loyalty. Building connections (and getting people invested in church work), can help to keep saints committed at a local church. Doing these things also helps to retain new converts and to keep them from falling away. This should also, be accompanied with regular grounding Bible classes, (for the new convert).

### **Resources:**

Shane Scott is the Preacher at the Valrico church of Christ, Valrico, FL

Website link <https://www.valricococ.org>

His interview video from "Leading others to Christ" is at

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-shane-scott>

## Benjamin Lee

### Great evangelism ideas from evangelist:

1. Five-minute rule (look around and talk to visitors first, before talking to anyone else. Do this for the first few minutes). Can use this time to invite people to Bible studies. This church has gotten a lot of Bible studies from people coming to visit.

How to ask people for a Bible study? The preacher (Benjamin Lee) used a training workbook he wrote to equip members in the church, on how to greet visitors and invite them for Bible studies. The workbook is called *"It's not rocket science. Simple ways to reach the lost."* He taught this workbook to the church where he is at.

The book is at "[spiritbuilding.com](http://spiritbuilding.com)."

### How did Benjamin Lee trains people to meet visitors?

A. Greet, say hello, smile, ask name, give your name, socially talk with them. Be loving...

"Treat people as you would want to be treated."

Treat them as you would want to be treated as a traveling visitor.

B. Sit with visitors during service. Nothing worse than having a visitor sit alone on an empty pew.

C. Walk with visitors when they are moving toward/away from the building and (warmly) talk with them.

D. Simply invite (after socially interacting with) them to a study, with words like "would you like to have a study?"

2. Benjamin also does "Meet up" Bible studies through the social media site [www.meetup.com](http://www.meetup.com). I keep hearing about evangelists doing this format. Benjamin meets at places like Panera Bread. Benjamin says this is a great place to interact with "the community and nearby university."

3. Benjamin made invitation cards to encourage members to use, (inside and outside of the church). During service, he also make it a point to get the visitor's cards. This is important for follow through.

4. This preacher also has apartment Bible studies at a church member's place. The neighbors are encouraged to come to ask spiritual questions. The event is called "put the preacher on the hot seat."

5. Benjamin also does marketing online in Google ads to promote the church and to get visitors.

6. His goal is to get the church members to ask themselves, this question, "do I care about reaching the lost?" Benjamin focuses on finding ways to get members to foster the right attitudes. He does this to create the right climate for evangelism. How does Benjamin do this?

A. He teaches evangelism materials regularly. It is part of the overall Bible study themes that are mentioned in the class curriculum. Teaching evangelism once a year is not regular, nor is it regular to touch on this theme every 6 months. It needs to be a frequent topic that is shared with the church. Of course, this is not the only thing taught nor is it taught nonstop. But this theme is regularly rotated (with other Bible topics). This needs to be done in the classes to equip and reinforce the need for outreach.

B. Benjamin leads by showing/sharing examples/stories in the church of those who are doing evangelism. He highlights what is being done at the congregation by the leadership/preacher, saints, etc.

C. During a sermon, Bible class, workshop, Benjamin asks the church members questions to make them think about their responsibility and personal roles in doing evangelism. And the importance of the need for evangelism work.

7. At the church where Benjamin goes to, he and the leaders set goals for members to talk to/invite 5 people to church every month. Benjamin trains the members and gives them the resources to help them do this.

#### **Resources:**

Benjamin Lee is the Preacher at West Main church of Christ, Lewisville, TX

Website link <https://westmainchurchofchrist.org>

His interview video from "Leading others to Christ" is at

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-benjamin-lee>

---

## **Ethan Longhenry**

### ***How to set up a study:***

- A. Those who are visiting, Ethan invites out to lunch. This helps to build rapport and get a feel for the visitors, in how to approach them for a study.
- B. Ethan likes to invite visitors to a study with group or a close nit one on one study.
- C. He focuses on getting the church/himself to build relationships with new converts. This helps to build bonds with members of the church. This has the added effect of increasing the retention rate of new converts.
- D. Ethan has grounding/new convert classes. Baptism is just the beginning of working/studying with them. There must be consistent follow through.
- E. His goal is to hit the coal while it is hot. Involve them, use them in spiritual activities, Bible studies, church work, leadership roles. If you don't use them and take advantage of the new babe in Christ, their zeal can dim and even die if not supported and encouraged.



**Resources:**

Ethan Longhenry is the preacher at Venice church of Christ – Los Angeles, CA

Website link <https://venicechurchofchrist.org>

His interview video from “Leading others to Christ” is at

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-ethan-longhenry>

---

**Max Dawson****How to create an evangelism culture in the church he’s at:**

1. Max uses terms when speaking to the congregation. Terms like “Evangelism is in our DNA.” Such terms serve as social modifiers to change certain perspectives and actions. These words help to instill in the local body a sense of meaning and purpose. Such terms also help to create (when spoken regularly to people) in faith and certainty, “self-fulfilling” prophecies. Evangelism needs to be taught and motivating words need to be used often.

=====

**Example sermon article (from Joseph Sullivan) on this topic:**

People are beautiful, not in the way of lust, desire, or attraction. But males and females, boys, and girls, young and old, are beautiful, for this simple reason...God loves them, (Romans 5:8). And if He loved them enough to give His Son, (John 3:16). Then they are pretty precious. And what is tenderly treasured by the Father and deeply valued should also be cherished by His children.

When it comes to salvation, remember it's the truth that brings the lost to Jesus, and it's the truth that holds the new infant, in fellowship with the Father. Yet love is foundational in joining them to a spiritual family of believers. The Apostles, John (3 John 4) and Paul (1 Timothy 1:2) *call new converts their children*. Obviously, we are all sons and daughters of God, but in this inspired text, we see that... those who were taught and those who did the teaching (can and should) have a bond that feels paternal.

Do parents give up on their children or undermine them? Do fathers or mothers look out for their own interests first or their sons and daughters? Spiritually speaking we need to look out for the spiritual welfare of new infants and do what parents do for their children. We need to mentor them, (spiritually speaking).

We need to help them grow up in salvation, through the Word, the milk of the Lord, as newborn babies, (1 Peter 2:2). And not let them stay stagnate in a weakened state of infancy through a lack of training and teaching, (Hebrews 5:11-14). The relationship is paternal. Paul called Titus, (Titus 1:4), and Timothy (1 Timothy 1:2) *his sons*. He worked with them and taught these young men. Paul wrote these letters to these young men to mentor them in the Lord's will, as leaders.

So, we should look at new members of the faith as people we can help raise up from infancy to spiritual adulthood. As you help them grow, remember evangelism does not stop at the baptism experience, that is where it begins. Before and after the conversion process, evangelism requires mentorship. It requires an investment of time and energy. As a father teaches a child how to act through inclusion, examinership, and verbal guidance, we too should nurture *God's spiritual children*.

As the scriptures say in 1 Thessalonians 2:7 "Instead, we were like young children among you. Just as a nursing mother cares for her children, 8 so we cared for you. Because we loved you so much, we were delighted to share with you not only the gospel of God but our lives as well."

**Reproducing** is our meaning and spiritual life purpose. We cannot find true fulfillment in Jesus till we do what we were put on earth to do. That of following this highest act of love, to save another, (Jude 23). That of meeting the greatest need the world has...that of **making the lost into God's children**. *Our spiritual biology and role as the saved is to save. We are here to reproduce through sharing the seed, the Word of truth. We are here to share our Father's message. We are here to bring about rebirth, through the "water and spirit,"(John 3:5).*

As 1 Peter 1:23;25 says, "*For you have been born again, not of perishable seed, but of imperishable, through the living and enduring word of God.* And this is the message we have preached to you."

God has placed within us, gifts. Too many die and have their talents buried with them, never used, never known. Yet if "you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, God's special possession..." Then you are bought with Jesus' death for a purpose, how does this quote (above) end, in 1 Peter 2:9?..... "that you may declare the praises of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light."

We are chosen, royal, even a special nation unto ourselves, (like Israel of old - Deuteronomy 14:2) holy in God's eyes, we are His and possessed by our Father. WHY? WHY did God rescue us from the pit, draw us out of the darkness into the bright light of day? So that we can declare Him, share Him, and let people know about His glorious promises.

Can you imagine a carpenter who painstakingly creates a beautiful piece, something with a purpose, and hides it away? We were created for a purpose and God is not ashamed of us. He wants us to shine and to live full lives in sharing His Word. No one should go through life and never live their purpose. No one should have their talents buried with them in the dirt. If we are to embrace who we are meant to be, we must live the commission, (Matthew 28:18-20). The great mission, task, work, is the great commission God has for our lives.

A man and a woman find completeness in creating a physical family. In spiritual matters, we can only find completeness in creating a spiritual family. Both are centered around love, and both fill us up with purpose. Both require stewardship, work, time, and give emotional satisfaction. Both roles are God-ordained. And are mutually symbiotic in the emotional bonding that comes from being a mentor.

=====

2. Max encourages the church to do their God given purpose, that of sharing Jesus. He makes materials to help with that. Evangelism is mentorship. Max follows this Bible truth.
  - A. The church where Max goes to, has visitors every week. This happens in large part, because people are inviting others to services. They are inviting friends, family, the cashier at Publix, a waitress at a restaurant, etc. This is actively encouraged and taught as part of the evangelism cultural work at this congregation.
  - B. Max Dawson has made cards that he gives to the members at the church to give to the community. This card has on one side information about the church and on the other side it says "If you are ever looking for a church..."

Then Max has written on the card... 6 bullet points. –

1. "Where people really respect the Bible."
2. "Where kids are learning about the Bible."
3. "Where people love one another."

And other positive bullet point highlights that incentivize people to check out the congregation. After the card is shown, highlighting these points, then the invitation is given..."if you like these things, (on the card) I recommend the Dowlen church of Christ."

3. Inviting people Max says is critical. One lady at Walmart had 3 invites given to her she said to Max when visiting for worship...she said if I have so many people interested and inviting me to their church I got to go and check it out. Figured I need to go to Dowlen Rd. to see what it is all about. Max says you can share a card no matter where you are, "if you're out in the community at all, talking to people, no matter who it is, whether it is at the post office, Walmart, restaurant, no matter where you are....you can do this." They have literally distributed 1,000's of cards. Giving a card, Max says is what almost anyone can do.

4. Max demonstrates how to share cards at church. During services in detailing evangelism (when speaking to the congregation) he shares how to give an invite. Max says, “let me show you how easy it is to give an invite.” Max steps down from the pulpit to one of the members and says...“My name is Max, I worship at the Dowlen Rd. church, I’d love for you to come by and visit.” And then he gives that person a card. This church has gotten contacts and converts through this method.
5. Max says in matters of church evangelism, “everything rises and falls on church leadership. I know of 8 churches that have closed their doors and in every case that was due to leadership. They were not thinking ahead, (looking towards the future of their church) they were not doing evangelism, (to ensure that future). Evangelism must start at the top, with the leadership of the congregation. All our elders have done evangelism and are evangelistic.” Max says a strong leadership helps saturate the churches culture with evangelism. Leaders do this through holding up evangelism through...their voiced ideas, through their teaching and through their support and through their example in evangelism work.
6. Max shared a story “A young lady (with her family) moved to be with us from south Texas and asked, “why are you guys regularly (every 3-4 wks.) talking and demonstrating ways (invites, etc.) of doing evangelism? Why are you showing lessons on how to convert people? Why are you doing evangelism? Listen where I came from the preacher would preach a lesson every once in a while on evangelism, but we were told by the preacher, that evangelism is optional for Christians. It’s not something you have to do.” Once this Sister was taught what the Bible says on evangelism she became a hard worker for the Lord in sharing Jesus.
7. Max says as part of giving an invite to a person, Max teaches church members, that they can also, bring up spiritual things in conversations with people, then given an invite. For example, if someone is at a barbecue with friends, a person can talk about a Bible study, that they were at and about the good points, (a helpful lesson or a caring/helpful teacher, etc.) A person can also talk about how God has blessed them at church, with couples/families that are their age...who help them and their kids spiritually...or about how great a sermon was in how it helped “my walk with the Lord.” Max says to look for ways/opportunities of talking about Jesus or spiritual things in day to day conversations. Then as the conversation progresses to invite someone to experience what you told them about, by giving them a card.
8. AND THEN WHEN PEOPLE COME, YOU GOT TO MAKE THEM FEEL WELCOME, LOVED AND COMFORTABLE. “You may not get a second chance to welcome those people, if you don’t do it right the first time.” I personally have heard saints and preachers advocating “*the 5 minute rule*.” This is simply a regular reminder given to the congregation during announcements and at other times to talk to visitors first for at least a few minutes before chatting up ones friends at church. This reminder is given by saying, “remember the 5 minute rule.” It is important to make people feel important and cared about. How many times have you traveled across the country, visited a church, and sat ignored while everyone else was hamming it up and socializing with their close friends and buddies? I’ve seen this and I know of others who have experienced this

too. People should be talked to and better yet invited out to eat for hospitality. These activities show Christian love and interest. Such actions also help to build rapport and connections.

9. Max says when it comes to evangelism that church members “needs to see everyone as a potential convert. Don’t try to qualify people, by saying things like, this person looks shabby or like a bum.” Max says they have past drug dealers and people who have sinned in life...come to the Lord. He points out that...Jesus wants us to save the sinners. They are the ones who need the gospel. Don’t say this person is living in sin, they are living in adultery, they drink, etc. they won’t want the gospel. In the past 2 months, they have had 5 baptism, even during the Covid 19 epidemic. They converted sinners to the cross by sharing Jesus. **Kerry Keenan** has some good examples of viewing contacts in this way, as well. His video is worth watching.

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-kerry-keenan>

10. What I have found in my church (University church of Christ) and this pattern at the Dowlen Rd church of Christ reflect that, is this....environments matter. At University people ask how my sick dad is all the time, how my parents are, (even though they don’t attend this congregation). I get cards, texts, emails, and prayers. This in turn makes my feelings flow naturally to doing the same for the members at University. I’m not saying a person should not support others, even in hostile environments. I am saying when a church culture is caring, this fosters a natural response in others to reciprocate. When a church is evangelistic, it fosters a natural response to reciprocate in its members to do the same...etc.

11. Also, elder **Westley Pollard** is at the same church, (Dowlen Rd church of Christ). You can see his interview here. <https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-westley-pollard>

#### **Resources:**

Max Dawson is the Preacher at the Dowlen Road church of Christ, Beaumont, TX

Website link <http://www.dowlenroad.com>

His interview video from “Leading others to Christ” is at

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-max-dawson>

---

## **Andy Cantrell**

### **Greeting visitors and Bible studies**

Andy since he was in his teens, saw church members greet visitors with these slogan phrases like, “Hey nice to have you, glad you are here.” “thanks for coming to visit us.” Yet Andy noticed visitors from the community were not asked (in a warm/tactful/personal way) certain (conversation oriented) questions like, “How are you doing?” Andy says such a question conveys interest and should be followed up (after

a contact gives feedback and a response) with further social interaction. A person should (tactfully, and warmly) give questions centered around asking them, “why are you here?” Then, “what are you looking for?” then, “what’s your story?” then, “would you like to study the Bible?”

This format is ingenious. These questions are deeply connective and rapport building. They say, “I care about you,” and “I want to know more about you,” (in regard to spiritual things). Then in giving an invite to personally meet to study in connection to the personal (social) groundwork and foundation being done, it makes the invite more effective. Andy even in his teens, got Bible studies doing this approach.

When looking for a Bible lesson format as a teen, Andy Cantrell mentions doing [Ivan Stewart’s “Open Bible series.”](#) And saved souls through using this material. Andy now does evangelism workshops at the church he attends. He says training others in evangelism is important.

Luke Heard (is a young married man in his 20’s). Luke has learned “Coffee shop evangelism” from Andy Cantrell. Luke goes to the [University church of Christ](#), where I attend. He let me interview him and pick his brain on this method, (that was taught to him by Brother Andy). Here is the recorded [clip](#) if you want to listen.

Andy showed Luke how to do Coffee shop evangelism. The clip details this but I want to write this down as well. Andy has had success with doing this method. Luke said his Brother in Law, (who is also a preacher) has had success as well with using this outreach format.

#### **Method:**

1. Andy goes to the same coffee shop at the same time, 2-3 times a week.
2. He sits down at a table, gets out his Bible and opens it up.
3. Andy sits and (casually) looks at people coming in.
4. If they make eye contact with him, he’ll smile. And wave to them. If they wave back, Andy will try to say something to them. Like “hi” “good morning,” etc.
5. Usually, they are dismissive. But if they look at him, Andy thinks...“Alright I’m going to try to get this person to sit down.”
6. The person can see Andy has a Bible and its open, so the individual knows Andy is studying the Bible.
7. If Andy gets interaction he will invite that person to sit down and offer to buy them coffee.
8. When it comes to money, Andy has a “kingdom fund” where he sets money aside every single month. Just for that specific service.
9. Andy has also developed connections with the staff and those who work at the coffee shop.

Andy says the key in doing evangelism is in genuinely caring about people, about their souls, their lives, what they’re going through, about who they are as uniquely created men and women of the Creator. Saving a soul is not about trying to get a notch to put on the belt. It’s not about trying to get people to “join our church.” It’s about helping people find Jesus. Evangelism is about letting people know you care. Having empathy towards others is a powerful tool in connecting with people and in getting them to emotionally invest in you and in what you’re sharing.

## Resources:

Andy Cantrell is the Preacher at the Northwest church of Christ, New Hope, MN

Website link [www.nwcocmn.org](http://www.nwcocmn.org)

His interview video from "Leading others to Christ" is at <https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-andy-cantrell>

*Please know you can just sit and have Bible studies. That is what BJ Sipe does and many others. This is just the way Andy does this form of work.* Many evangelists do **"Coffee shop evangelism."** This is done by doing Bible studies in public places. It can be at coffee shops, fast food, or dine-in restaurants. Here is an uplifting evangelism video from a *young man named BJ Sipe on "Coffee shop evangelism."* [www.facebook.com/leadingotherstochrist/posts/475723354145848](http://www.facebook.com/leadingotherstochrist/posts/475723354145848)

---

## Rick Billingsley

### Learning curves and visitor program

Rick in beginning evangelism looked for evangelist to model himself after. He looked for ideas that had been successful to replicate. Which is brilliant. In any field, if a person wants success, they should look at those in that chosen field who are successful and to those who get results. After Rick learned successful methods, he went around the Country and helped others replicate positive results. Rick did this by holding Gospel Meeting Workshops on evangelism throughout the United States.

Rick says "mistakes are the best teacher. They help a person find patterns of success by trial and error." When he teaches evangelism classes around the US, he highlights mistakes to avoid from his own experience. Rick also has a training program for his own local church to do. He believes in 2 Timothy 2:2 in matters of imparting spiritual truths on evangelism.

Rick has a "personal growth worksheet" for church members to sign. The sheet has members share, what they want to do in spiritual work (inside and outside of the church). As well as...*WHAT THEY WANT TO LEARN to do, so as to be able to do other duties of service down the road.* Like song leading, preaching, being a Sunday school teen teacher, conducting a Bible study, door knocking, etc. And from their Rick (or someone else) gives them a training class or some one on one support, (as a mentor) to help them...develop in the area they are wanting to serve God.

Rick says it's important to get members and *especially the new converts* into the church work immediately. He said that is what the elders do at the church where he's at. Rick says, wherever you are at, the elders will try to find a use for each member. This is important. Rick says people need to feel needed and wanted. Using these people lets them know you value them. I can relate to this, through the years of my life, I've seen this happen to others as well as to myself. Sadly, too often in the Lord's

church, God's people are not always used. To many times it's the elders kids, or those in a certain clique, etc. who are given roles of service in the church. Too often all the leadership seems to focus on, and value is, "do they come Sunday morning and Sunday night?" Instead of asking this needed (introspective) question, "are we helping the saints grow and mature?"

Rick says the church where he is at has 5 groups, that have 5 deacons leading it. The deacons report to the elders on what happens in each group, (group activities, concerns, struggles, goals, etc.) These groups meet up at people's homes every second Sunday. Each group focuses on doing things to help the flock and to give service in His kingdom. The activities also help the saints in their spiritual development. Group activities can be focused on helping the saints who are physically sick or who are spiritual struggling. Such activities can include writing to those who need cards, coordinating visits, texting/emailing/calling people who need encouragement, making a meal, etc.

It is imperative to have the church members do hospitality. They need to be given teachings on this and be given training in this and be given assignments on reaching out to different folks. This fosters a sense of personal responsibility and accountability in doing this important work.

---

**Most conversions have come from Rick's visitor program:**

Details:

- A. Visitors are warmly greeted. And socially engaged.
- B. They have 4-5 greeters at the church building to greet people before/after service.
- C. The visitors are given a "visitor card" that's easy to fill out, that's attached on a clip board with pen. The clip board also has a very bright/warm "welcome" brochure. The visitor card is for getting information from the visitor, for future follow through.
- D. Once the visitors give the card back, the preacher gets a copy, the (deacons in charge) and the leaders get a copy. Also, the group in charge, (gets a copy). Those who are assigned to send a card, send out a "thank you" note/card during that week. It does not matter if the person is in the area or from out of town. They will be given a warm/personal/caring/thoughtful "thank you" card for visiting the church assembly for worship.
- E. The preacher also writes a personal "thank you" *letter* for coming to visit.
- F. And the preacher visits them that very same week with 1 of the members. Either that or 2 of the members will go out to visit them. The elders often times are involved with the visiting, the deacons are also involved in such work. The rule is to take 2 people. The saints who visit need to be friendly, warm, and social.
- G. The visits only happens after the "thank you" card/letter have been send. That helps to prepare the way. Again, the preacher sends a nice polished looking, well written letter to thank the contact for visiting and the saints also focus on sending out a "thank you," message. If the envelopes are sent out on a Monday, they wait to visit till Thursday or Friday.
- H. The "fill out card" for the visitor also has a *survey* attached on the clip board. This survey is important. The survey helps to get the contacts invested in the church and also helps the church improve in its interactions with visitors. This survey also encourages the visitors to fill out the cards contact information content. The survey card has 4 questions,
  1. What did you notice first (about the church)?



2. What did you like the most (about the church)?
  3. What did you like the least (about the church)?
  4. Were we friendly?
- I. The questions are read the following Wednesday night, to the congregation. This helps to build accountability with the church and helps get them more invested in the process of visitor interaction. If the survey is positive it encourages them to do more, if it is negative, it incentivizes them to do better.
  - J. The goal is to help the visitors feel wanted, needed, and appreciated and loved. Indifference hurts evangelism. Personal interest in the visitors helps with evangelism work.
  - K. In 16 years of doing this, they only had 1 person upset “with us for visiting them.” Visiting, says the preacher, goes very well. They visit the visitors that same week.
  - L. They don’t call ahead of time.
  - M. The approach when visiting them, after giving a greeting...
    1. “By the way we really want to let you know how much we appreciate you visiting with us.” Sincere signs of appreciation as well as given complements are important.
    2. “By the way did you get that letter from me (or card from us) and did you get that little survey card?” *Answer*, “like yes we did.” Or the like. If they say they “have not signed survey” have extra survey cards with you...
    3. If they have not filled out the survey, then the contacts are then asked “could you fill out the little survey card from us? We like to read them on Wednesday night to share with the congregation what you shared on the survey.” If they did fill out the survey, just mention, “we appreciate you doing that! We like to read them on Wednesday night to share with the congregation what you shared on the survey.” (This helps to engage them socially and lets them know they are valued. This also helps to get them emotionally invested) This is a great social opener and a way to start dialogue. DO this interaction with warmth. Train those who visit to say these types of phrases. As well as on how to come across, (personal, social, warm, friendly).

On the card, theirs a question “are you interested in a study.” If they sign “yes,” they will get a lesson send to them, (with the letter from the preacher) and that can be another topic to bring up, when with the contact while doing the visit.

For all visitors, when at church, this question is presented “if you have any Bible questions please let us know?”

Church members and the preacher try to invite the visitors out to eat. Also, the visitors are encouraged to join in potluck group meetings. Hospitality is a great way to build connections and helps to get contacts invested in the people and the church.

The church members also invite people to sit in on Meetup.com group Bible studies at a restaurant or at Barnes and Nobles, etc. This church has 4 Bible groups taking place each week, led by members that have 2-3 other members there to support the effort. Topics taught are on issues, like the historical Jesus, etc. The more the contacts attend the deeper one can delve into the essential fundamentals.

My personal note: one thing I keep seeing in “Leading others to Christ” are the successes from evangelists in different churches, who do something like this format. They interact with visitors and invite them to Bible studies. They grow their congregations through this method.

Another good example of such “visitor” work is **Kerry Keenan** he does something similar. See his video interview here. <https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-kerry-keenan>

#### **Resources:**

Rick Billingsley has solid gold material here...

He is the Preacher at the Walnut Street church of Christ – Cary, NC

Website link <https://www.peopleforjesus.org>

His interview video from “Leading others to Christ” is at

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-rick-billingsley>

---

## **Ricky Shanks**

### **The power of love and hospitality**

Personal note: Ricky is the reason I got into evangelism. He has taught gospel meetings centered around the themes of outreach. I was blessed to hear his first meeting at the Concord COC, in NC while in my teens. Ricky during that time had pre-teens and teenagers over to his house for Bible study and singing. He was also my councilor at FC Alabama Camp. I’ve learned a lot from him, Ricky was my first “mentor” in sharing evangelism insights and guidance. I’ve written this Blue (game plan) book as a personal workbook for use. Things I’ve known through the years, I’ll probably leave out, since I’m looking for new content to incorporate in my evangelism strategies. The new things I have learned from Ricky, are the things, I’m going to apply...they are written below.

Points of evangelism work:

1. Ricky invites people who are visiting (the congregation after services) out to a meal or to a restaurant for hospitality. This is rarely done in the brotherhood or in the denominational world. Hospitality is powerful, it deeply impacts those who visit. This action also helps to build bonds and make the visitor more receptive towards an invite to a Bible study. This practice is great for connecting with new converts, new members who have moved into the area, as well as with the congregations, various church members as a whole.
2. This is Ricky’s stats. This is powerful: He says if the church members “have a new Christian over for a study with 12 families...If they get to 7 families, the new Christian has a 93% chance of remaining faithful.” This is something worth putting into motion. And is worthy of pointing out.
3. If you’re looking to do evangelism, I’ve not met someone who reflects the selfless, humble, caring spirit that Ricky Shanks has. He is a good person to learn from and pattern after in the example of attitude. Modern examples help us all, as we all seek to pattern ourselves into being

more...like Jesus and His truth. Ricky helps to set a modern example of this NT concept in his attitude in daily life in the service to the lost.

When Ricky was doing a Gospel Meeting in Tampa, FL I saved the recordings. The lessons are chalk full of exceptional content. I have the audio files here if you want to download them and listen to the evangelism lessons Ricky taught. It is chalk full of data.

**1 Lesson:** [Building confidence and boldness.](#)

**2 Lesson:** [Reasons for ineffectiveness.](#)

**3 Lesson:** [Edify the new convert.](#)

**4 Lesson:** [Prayer.](#)

#### **Resources:**

Ricky Shanks is the Preacher at the Gainesville church of Christ Gainesville, GA

Website link <https://answersfromthebible.org>

His interview video from "Leading others to Christ" is at

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-ricky-shanks>

---

## **Gary Fisher**

### **Door knocking**

This evangelist works with young people and helps with FC college. Gary is also a fan of door knocking to set up Bible studies. His effective approach goes like this, when I knock on a door I say "*hi I'm Gary. And I'm talking to folks about reading the Bible.*"

*Do you all get a chance to do that sort of thing?"* Depending on how they respond, I say "*I'm a Christian and I'd like to sit down and read the Bible in their homes, and I am looking for people who have an interest in doing something like that.*" Gary says, "I don't go up with anything in my hand. I like to go up with my wife or with a kid to make me more approachable and to let them know nothing is shady or something like that."

When his son (Kyle) was 15, and his younger daughter, was with Gary when he was doing a gospel meeting for a week in AL. Kyle (his son) got together (7) other teenagers to go out to do door knocking... to set up studies. These young people got 7 sign ups and did door knocking again another day and got 3 other studies set up. Gary had his son and daughter stay behind to do these studies they set up. They were trained by their father to do this simple method of going door knocking to get Bible studies...

Gary says he gets plenty of “no’s” when doing door knocking but he will get “yes’s.” If someone says “no,” then he just moves onto the next door. If a person keeps doing this they will get results. And even if one does not get a Bible study set up, when one gives an invite, conversations can be created, and seeds can be sow and planted for a later harvest.

#### **Resources:**

Gary Fisher is the Preacher at the Bargersville church of Christ, Bargersville, IN

Website link <https://www.bargersvillechristians.com>

His interview video from “Leading others to Christ” is at

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-gary-fisher>

## ***Section Two:***

**The second source material came from the University church of Christ.**

**The interviews were done by the Evangelist Steve Patton**

**Church Address: 14314 Bruce B Downs Blvd, Tampa, FL 33613**

**Congregational Website** <https://www.universitychurchofchrist.org>

*Note: This church has their lessons, sermons and materials listed on their website. The link has excellent resources to check out. Some of the sources are shared below...*

## **First interview - Don Bunting**

#### ***Highlights from the interview:***

- E. Don uses internet ads like “Google ads” to “invite people to have a Bible study.” He has a website where people go to when they click on the ad. This site is where he highlights this focus of evangelism. It details constructive ways of getting people to sign up at the site for Bible studies. See site here <https://nycbibleteacher.com/don-bunting>. This site can serve as a good template for replication. You can download PDF file of the site for study/application for your own site [here](#).

Don has brought many to the Lord through this method of work in serving Christ with the gospel. Number 1 question people ask when contacting Don Bunting through his ad is this... “does your church have Bible class,” or “what type of Bible classes, (inside/outside of church) do

you have?” Let me stress I know of other preachers, who have had success with this method. It is extremely powerful.

It’s good to have out of church class groups set up and excellent congregational (for all ages) Bible classes set up for the times of meeting. It’s also good to know the topics and themes of both of these class formats. Know the positive points to share when people text/email or call to ask these questions.

- I keep hearing about evangelists using Meetup.com and Zoom (to invite others to online or offline) virtual Bible studies. Don Bunting is one such person doing this. These are effective methods.
- Don always says a friendly and loving church makes a difference. Visitors need to be made to feel welcome. Also, having the right attitude in the church makes a big difference. A congregation should be upbeat, happy, warm, social, caring. A cold, apathetic, sad, gloomy church hurts evangelism work. When visitors come in and see the good attitudes, this impacts them positively, if they see the bad attitudes saturate a congregation, they won’t be coming back.
- Don is doing what other cyber evangelists have done, that are also getting the same success. That being, they are running ads that invite people to a Bible study or they are doing Bible courses to lead to the same result. Two people I’ll mention worth checking out is JP Flores and Clint De France. JP gets about a dozen studies a week, Clint around twenty studies a week. I studied up on Clint awhile back. I put the data I learned at this link [here](#). I also copied the website into a file, [here](#). JP Flores and Clint De France use Facebook ads, which are cheaper in cost and are more effective, in reaching more people. Google ads are better for targeting specific interests through keyword placement and thus are more effective for getting better follow through with ad clicks.
- **Another good example is Mike Wilson.** He runs social media ads to encourage people to visit the churches site that has a theme highlighting the importance of having a purpose filled life. The website encourages people to visit the church to learn more and to sign up for Bible studies to develop/learn how to have a purpose filled life in Christ. Mike/the church has been getting visitors and Bible studies/conversions through this method. See video <https://leadingtoherstochrist.org/interview-with-mike-wilson>

### Resources:

There is a lot more data recorded by the University church of Christ. See the churches material. Click on the Don’s [PowerPoint](#) file to learn more about his methods of success.

You can also watch the interview video from the University church. This video is very in-depth and has more details on outreach. Class video [https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QcUq2W\\_FvUs](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QcUq2W_FvUs)

Don Bunting is the Preacher at the “Upper West Manhattan church of Christ.”

Website link: <https://uwmchurchofchrist.org>

Main interview video <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mc2AuyDKclA&t=1s>

---

## Second interview - Bill Sanchez

### *Highlights from the interview:*

- Bill was saved through mentorship in his youth. Bill works with the youth at church through mentorship. Bill Sanchez teaches teenagers in Bible classes and has the boy students each prepare a lesson to teach. The teens invite their friends to hear them teach the Bible. This has a multi sided blessing, it firstly trains young men to be teachers, it helps to ground them further in the Word, it gets them more invested into Christ and His service, and it turns these young men into evangelists.
- Through this method, their friends have heard about Jesus. Such involvement with teens from the community is powerful. Bill focuses on teens in his outreach in other venues as well.
- **How to foster evangelism and serious-minded Bible students in the young In your middle school and high school and college-age classes?**

Have the students be assigned Bible themes to teach. Break the class up, into parts. You can have the males and females separated into two distinct groups. For each group, rotate each student to teach one of those classes, (according to their sex) for each (separate) class meeting.

Encourage and praise the student after giving a lesson and have students say what they liked about the lesson given. This will turn them into more serious Bible students, (leaders, evangelists, potential preachers) as well as cultivate in them an appetite to teach from the Bible. Encourage the students to invite their friends on the day they choose to teach.

To cultivate evangelism in these classes, when you rotate each student, have them all do an evangelism theme. The theme can be about ways of doing evangelism, what the Bible says about the lost, or the need for soul-saving, or what Jesus did in His earthly ministry in sharing the gospel, etc. The themes can be about baptism, Jesus' death on the cross, the importance of the Lord's Supper, the scripture on Bible authority, the importance of loving God, etc. Any Bible theme that can help ground the young teacher/the class, as well as the visitor, are good themes.

Again, praise the students after they give the lesson and ask the class to share what they liked about the lesson. This will foster an interest in evangelism and in talking about it. This process will get the students emotionally invested in evangelism work.

The next step (after some time has passed) is to invite your class to an evangelism event and to take them out to eat afterward as a reward for their efforts. Make the event fun and easy to do. They are just kids; the goal is to get them exposed to doing outreach work and to get them involved. Give them positive enforcements like praise and have a group bonding event afterward. Get them involved in church activities, like opening the doors for the people before church, visiting the elderly saints, making communion bread, etc. Example: I would hold the door for folks and ask the young people to help. They felt valued by being included and this helped mold them.

Remember what I wrote before: Evangelism is mentorship. Every "Paul" needs a "Timothy," and "Silas." The role of the Christian is to teach others and train those taught to teach others. This is circular and should continue as a teaching process for the saints to ground, equip and mentor. As 2 Timothy 2:2, says, "And the things that thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also."

***Special remarks: Bill has young people over to his home and teaches them to teach. He first goes over half of a Bible lesson book with someone then, he has them teach the other half. Bill trains the young people, and mentors them into teachers. Brother Sanchez has Bible classes at his house, where these young people teach Bible lessons as a Bible study group. These young men invite their friends to hear them teach. From this work, souls are saved.***

### **Mentorship matters: thoughts on this theme (from Joseph Sullivan)**

We need to engage in Mentorship: Make evangelism a part of the church. It should not rest alone on the shoulders of the paid preacher/elders/paid evangelist. Here is a key phrase to imprint on one's mind, "evangelism is mentorship." In evangelism find ways to mentor people into teachers, workers, outreach event coordinators, and leaders.

The surest way to ensure evangelism thrives in a church is by creating a "multi-head Hydra." If one (evangelism) leader gets sick, dies, moves to another town, has to stop for personal reasons, falls away, is out on vacation, is distracted with the birth of a newborn, etc. the other evangelism leaders can keep the work going.

The goal of evangelism is mentorship. The goal of leaders is not to create followers, but leaders. Yes, in the short-term new members in a group will be codependent. But as a leader works with the group, as they become comfortable and evolve, the leader needs to encourage them to take roles of leadership. He should show them how to set up events, and teach classes, by having them accompany him to such activities, then slowly getting them more involved in the process of event creation and class teaching.

Evangelism is mentorship. Every "Paul" needs a "Timothy," and "Silas." The role of the Christian is to teach others and train those taught to teach others. This is circular and should continue as a teaching process for the saints to ground, equip and mentor. As 2 Timothy 2:2, says, "And the things that thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also." Regarding evangelism, encourage other members within the church, to grow in this field, to use their imagination in generating new and creative ideas on outreach, to talk about ways of sharing the gospel, to teach others in classes, to do outreach work, to create their own venues of evangelism projects.

Encourage them to have "evangelism journals" to record their idea and thoughts. Innovation must be fostered in the church. Self-reliance and initiative in matters of evangelism must be supported, nurtured, and praised.

Such industry must be tenderly watered and given sunlight, through encouragement. Even those who are not interested (in evangelism) may become interested (later on) and choose to join in this work if they are given opportunities for inclusion and support. If a leader sees someone with a certain talent, they should use that person and take advantage of that talent. Don't wait for change, unless you are willing to cultivate it.

Remember "evangelism is mentorship." When doing evangelism events/activities/classes the leader(s) will have opportunities to create an environment of mentorship and support.

Note to leaders: Mentorship is about being a leader and in giving the saints, missions to do and purposes to pursue. Have goals. As a leader of your church find what you want to achieve. Make detailed steps on how to get to the desired end result. As a church talks about the goals often. Pray about those goals. In group meetings and devotionals, discuss those goals. As leaders assign the members to do the designated outlined steps to achieve those goals. Create a culture that actively invites people to services and to Bible studies.

#### **Resources:**

Bill Sanchez is the Preacher at the church at the Embry Hills church of Christ.

Website link <http://embryhills.com>

To see his video on evangelism work, click on the below link.

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=iOL2mGJ0BJs>

---

## **Third interview - Phil Robertson**

### ***Highlights from the interview:***

- I'd encourage you to watch the video below. What I found most helpful was the "text groups." Phil has greeters in the church, text a group in charge of meeting visitors. The group texts each other before, during and after services, to highlight who needs to be contacted in the audience. This is great for evangelism work as well as for networking. If a visitor comes in the group gets a text to let them know to contact that person, the group will also get a text, if someone needs encouragement, if a new convert needs spiritual support, etc. The group keeps their eyes open before service, during service and after service and texts members of that group to look out for needs they see in the congregation. This includes visitors who are potential Bible study contacts.



- The text networking group format is a great idea for different groups to contact one another for text interaction, for doing different things, from evangelism, to encouragement, to church activities, to Bible study events, etc.
- This is a great idea also, for a Bible class group to text the teacher questions during church Bible class, if a member is at home or if one is more comfortable with texting the teacher, (then speaking) then this avenue is open. This can prove, especially helpful, if the teacher does not see a person raise their hands, etc.
- Side personal note: When I worked in CA as an evangelist, at the San Bernardino church of Christ, I added everyone's cell number to a group I made on my cell phone. When I texted the group about successes, about upcoming evangelism events, about people needing prayers, etc. the church members, all saw the text, the members would also use this text forum to reply and share their own news about church related things. This social platform helped draw each other closer and it helped to open up the lines of communication. The church members learned more about what I was doing in evangelism, and we all learned more about the events taking place at church and in each other's lives. It helped everyone feel more connected as a church.

#### Resources:

Phil Robertson is the Preacher at the Glen Springs church of Christ.

Website link <http://glenspringschurch.com>

To see his video on evangelism work, click on the below link.

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ntMODyXCqA4&t=1s>

## Section Three:

### Personal studies from other sources:

#### People I have met or researched:

##### **A. Example of Brent Hunter:**

*Another one I'll point out, is **Brother Brent Hunter**, This guy is still a wealth of knowledge. Besides Ricky Shanks, Brent played a large role in my evangelism development, (through my study of his work).*

*I've heard of churches growing by 20 members a year when 10 percent of its members do 90 percent of the work.*

*People who head such work and have pioneered successful methods, are folks like Brent Hunter.*

*Brents Method: He generates a group that invites people to hear a popular presentation like the "Big Picture of the Bible." He has cards made for people to pass out. Brent has another group. He has in this group a handful of people ready to share that presentation with the invited. Brent has two groups, a larger group that invites people when these members are in casual settings, like restaurants, grocery stores, running errands, doing jobs, having get togethers, etc., to say something like this during the conversation, "My Bible group is doing a great Bible Presentation on how the whole Bible from Old Testament to New Testament comes together for one theme and one plan God has for your life...and my life." Enthusiastically invite the person to the presentation. You may choose to give a card with Big Picture content and ask them if they would be interested, having them give their number on the back.*

*This group (around 30) can invite friends, coworkers, waitresses, cashiers, family members, etc., to hear the Big Picture and another smaller group (3-7 people) who will receive their contact information. This smaller group will contact them for a presentation. This actually happened- 20 souls added in a year, with only 10 percent of the church helping. Imagine if 100% of church were involved!!*

Brent Hunter's video is worthy of watching.

<https://leadingotherstochrist.org/interview-with-brent-hunter/>

Check out his evangelism training website.

<http://www.kirklandchurchofchrist.org/big-picture/e-teams>

Brent Hunter is the Preacher at the Church of Christ at Kirkland in NE

<http://www.kirklandchurchofchrist.org/>

---

## **B. Example of Jack Adams:**

***His story and evangelism tips. The power of living each day and active life in sharing Jesus.***

***Storyline:*** Jack Adams is one of the most fervent workers I have ever met. He is in his middle 70's. Jack can out work me, in doing outreach. He's still has a pep in his step long after I'm exhausted...doing outreach with him. Jack gets up every morning at 5 AM, works out, then reads his Bible. Jack is not a paid preacher or a paid evangelist. Yet he has worked along preachers and has done great things for the cause of Christ. One year Jack converted around 100 people, the elders told him to stop. They did not want those kinds of people, (poor or were from past bad backgrounds) in their congregation. The preacher he was working with was fired and Jack left that congregation. I've seen stuff like this too. This attitude needs to change in the kingdom of God. When working with Jack at another congregation these are the things I learned from him...

### **Points of Jacks work:**

1. When working with Jack, when we'd go door knocking in the "ghetto" where people tend to sit outside in their front yards or be standing around or walking down the walkways talking. Jack would strike up a conversation with them, ask them how their doing and talk to them in relation

to the answers given, further asking questions on what he heard them say. He'd also make remarks to keep the conversation going, by simply mentioning the weather, and trying to engage further dialogue. We'd also go to places where people were disabled/elderly and were sitting outside, (in the ghetto).

The key to success in door knocking (in the ghetto) or in approaching people in these venues is in creating a conversation. Once a dialogue is going, Jack would ask if they'd like to do a Bible study. When people live in the poorest areas, they don't always have cars, jobs, etc. They may be bored or lonely, (especially the elderly and disabled). Poor people tend to have more scars and less worldly securities.

It's the hurting that are more likely to accept the Word and opportunities for Bible study. If the contact says "no," Jack keeps engaging that person in conversation. If it's an area we plan to visit again, Jack will ask, "can we come over again to chat sometime?" If they say "yes," we come over and talk with them again. Jack again casually, tactfully inserts an invite again. The invite is warm, personal and it uses words like, "we'd love to get together with you and talk about God's Word," etc. What I have found is that conversations build rapport. The longer the conversation the better. It helps in building a connection. Connections build trust and improve a future chance for Bible study.

2. Another reason Jack is a successful evangelist is his consistency. Jack is always looking for opportunities to invite people to church and to invite people to do Bible studies. His evangelism is a *day to day lifestyle*, not a month to month (one time event) or a week to week (one time event).

Let me ask a question did Jesus set aside evangelism to do once a year? Did the Apostles set aside outreach as an event to do annually? Was not evangelism a part of their life and shown as an active part of it? I've traveled across the US. And have visited many congregations. I've also been a member at over a dozen churches. I've seen good and bad examples of evangelism. When I attended a Bible class I once heard an elder at a church complained that soul saving was not taking place (at that congregation) due to the times we live in, that "we are in the days of Noah."

This church held one event once a year and seldom had visitors (from the community) or conversions despite it being a very large congregation. Yet I know of another church with the same membership numbers that gets Bible studies, soul saving conversion, and visitors regularly. They made evangelism a part of the churches culture and the members made evangelism a part of their lifestyle, instead of a once a year event. The church that does evangelism once a year is slowly shrinking. The church that makes God's command to share Jesus of first importance in zeal and priority, (Matthew 6:33) has added almost another 100 people to their group.

Jack has the same attitude. Probably even more so than these active church members, (who do evangelism weekly) for he literally made it a goal to daily approach someone for Jesus. Jack is walking around each day, with eyes open, with his heart ready, and with his lips prepared to

share the Word. Which is more effective? Is doing evangelism once a year more effective? Is doing evangelism once every 6 months, more effective? Or is doing evangelism once every 3 months more effective? Better yet, is doing evangelism once every month even better? How about those who do evangelism once every week? Is that even greater in generating leads and contacts?

**Those who are doing evangelism regularly each week when opportunities are introduced or when opportunities are made get more results than those who do outreach less frequently...(like every 3 months or 6 months, etc.)**

*Yet for those who step up even more, and daily seek opportunities, they will reach even more people.* This is why Jack has saved 100 souls in 1 year. It is because evangelism is a habitual lifestyle practice in his *daily life*. Now I am not saying you'll convert 100 people if you daily seek someone to share Jesus with. I am saying you'll get more results then if you weekly look for opportunities. And most certainly then if you do it every blue moon (once a year) like some churches and saints do.

The Bible gives us examples from Christ, the Apostles, the book of Acts, etc. that evangelism...is not supposed to be a once a year thing, or even a one-time monthly thing. Sharing Jesus is supposed to be who we are as Christians, it's supposed to be a part of our lives. Our Savior did not sit around doing carpentry, waiting for a special event to help the hurting lost soul during His time on earth. The Apostles did not wait for an annual event to share the salvation story. Why should we be doing such things?

In anything in life, the more frequently a person does a thing, the faster they grow and the better the results they get in the goals they are pursuing. When a person seeks to grow daily and seeks opportunities daily, then results will come much more quickly than those who are less active. Christian potlucks, updated carpet, and bathrooms, within the congregation, are good. But by themselves they don't make much difference in growing a church. Now a rundown church can turn people off. But even if a building is brand new and everything is updated, the growth will only seriously begin to take place, when the church engages in evangelism.

Changing the churches name of the group, changing the time, taking pictures of church members, and posting them on your social media pages is not, by itself, going to do much in matters of church growth. What causes growth is evangelism. I once knew of a lady who asked the elders for 1,000's of dollars to spruce up the children Bible classes. The church was small and dying. The congregation and very few young people. She thought "if I just decorate and make the classes better people will come and their kids will fill the classes." But without evangelism, the classes remained as they were. Let me repeat this. These activities don't do much to grow a church. Evangelism is what actively works in growing a church.

3. Mentorship: Jack also believes evangelism is mentorship. He has actively helped train people in evangelism while working with me. He's helped train others in the past too. In his training and equipping, Jack has also helped me with pointers and with helpful evangelism training materials. While working with Jack we'd invite God's people to help us teach non-Christians and new converts. This process helps saints grow in outreach work. We'd invite people to help us in

working with new converts. I'd look for those who can be used in doing evangelism events, as well. Remember evangelism is mentorship. We need to help others grow in this field of service.

4. Evangelism is for all and should be supported by those who do such work. Jack is a good example of a soul winner who does great work. I've known people like Jack who've had to go against the grain to get anything accomplished in kingdom soul saving work. I'm writing the below themes to detail the seriousness of this issue.

**The wrong perspective in Evangelism:** No one owns the Great Commission: Evangelism is mentorship. Whether you are a boy, girl, man, or woman. Whether you are black, brown, or white, we are all called to promote, teach, and be leaders in evangelism training (of saints) and of soul winning teaching (of the lost). Evangelism is not about turf, territory, politics, or position. No one's owned the copyright to share Jesus. The Great Commission is for all. **(Matthew 28:18-20)**

Yet too often times in the Lord's churches, the saints think it's the preachers job to do evangelism and teach evangelism. You could have a qualified soul winner and apt teacher with years of experience in the congregation, able and willing to train the members in outreach, but because he is not a paid preacher or a paid evangelist or an elder, he's marginalized, ignored, and not used.

I know of top evangelists who have received this treatment. I've personally have seen this at the churches I attend. When I am a paid preacher or a paid evangelist, then I am given opportunities to teach soul saving truths and promote evangelism themes within the assembly. But when I am a "lowly church member" on the totem pole of value, I am not used.

Too many churches, elders and leaders have the attitude that the elders and the preacher/evangelist is supposed to promote these themes. But dearly beloved, God expects us all to lift Jesus up in soul winning work. Even in using ones members in church roles in worship, too often times, in many churches, it's the elders, preacher and their children who serve, while others wait for months, or years before they are used, (if at all). In too many churches, it's those who are more favored or who are in the inner circle who serve. Its the preachers and elders children who are up every month giving short talks, doing song leading, serving on the Lord's supper, etc. The kingdom and especially in matters of evangelism, is not about turf, territory, position, or politics. Things need to change in the churches. Not all churches are like this, but many are.

In certain churches, when the elders and the paid preacher or the paid evangelist heads up an evangelism work, they tend to view evangelism as their turf and territory. And if a church member is teaching a evangelism class at home or doing a door knocking event, then their encroaching on their "land," so to speak. Individual saints who are doing such evangelism work....can be viewed by the leadership and even the congregation as "going against" the church work or against the preacher, elders, etc. Such mentalities create a "us vs them" attitude.

When the leaders, preachers, paid evangelists choose to not head up/promote/do evangelism, the soul winners who are bringing people to the Lord, may find passive aggressive or even not so passive, opposition. For such lukewarm men will believe that such successful work, is making them look bad, when others are doing what they are not.

And when leaders, preachers and paid evangelists focus on outreach and yet others are making better headway within the congregation as they individually seek their own methods, goals, training, activates etc. these same men view such results, not with joy but as competition and as undermining their role as leaders.

Now I am not saying church members should not support the work of the church in matters of evangelism. But when a church member wants to have their own class at their home, or engage college people in campus work, or create a group for street work, etc. then such activities should not be promoted or viewed (by others) as divisive, or as undermining the eldership. Such work Christians do is Biblical, and should be supported, not attacked.

Please know this is not the case in all assemblies. But this does happen in the Lord's church. As church members you can still get things done in such churches. I've saved souls in such situations. We need to not be bitter in such circumstances. These hardships are given for our growth. And God has a reasons for all struggles we face. Yet I write this topic down in words, in the hopes that people will change the kingdom in regards to this serious issue.

Not all places have this problem. Many of these issues can be talked out within a church. Even in matters of wanting to teach a class or head a evangelism work, the leaders may listen and help you in such church activities within the congregation. All you have to do is ask. Not all places do the things mentioned above. And many times its simply due to a lack of unawareness. But for places that do struggle with this issue, such problems can be fixed...

I write to you elders, to love your flock enough to encourage your sheep and support your sheep, when they want to do an event or get an outreach activity going. I write to you preachers and paid evangelists, who hold up the Word each Sunday, to value the spiritual (soul saving) contributions your fellow brothers and sisters give. They are trying to help you in the goal of growing your local church and in prolonging the longevity of your congregation. We are all playing for the same team and are on the same side. Let us promote love, unity and mutual edification, in this needed work of sharing the gospel with the lost.

Let us have the mind of Christ...

**Philippians 2:1** *"Therefore if you have any encouragement from being united with Christ, if any comfort from his love, if any common sharing in the Spirit, if any tenderness and compassion, 2 then make my joy complete by being like-minded, having the same love, being one in spirit and of one mind. 3 Do nothing out of selfish ambition or vain conceit. Rather, in humility value others above yourselves, 4not looking to your own interests but each of you to the interests of the others.5 In your relationships with one another, have the same mindset as Christ Jesus."*

---

## C. Example of Bill Sullivan:

I've seen Christians have church invite day events, and around 5,10 sometimes up to 30, 40 people come to those events, then a general invite (from the front) is given and not one visitor signs a card. I'm not saying that is always the case. But there is a better way of inviting guests. When I worshipped at the North Blvd church of Christ, my dad, Bill Sullivan who was an elder at the time, with the other leaders, had saints come up to the visitors (before and after worship) and talk with them, then the church members were encouraged to give a friendly invite to sign the visitor's card. The card was handed over when the invite was given. And a reason was given. Like "Can you sign our visitor card we want to write you and thank you for coming to worship with us."

The North Blvd church had an 80 percent sign-up rate. There is power in doing personal one-on-one invites. A general church announcement to invite a person to be baptized, do a Bible study, sign a visitor's card, or join in some spiritual activity at church is not as effective as when its given one-on-one to a person in a personal way. Talking to people and then inviting folks to do something is 50 times more powerful than a general invite.

---

## D. Example of JP (John Paul) Flores

***This man is one of the best evangelists I have come across. You can watch his evangelism workshops at the sermon/media page on the churches [link](#).***

### ***What he does for success:***

***Stage One:*** This man gets about a baptism a month or every other month. His strategy. The church teaches in the assembly an evangelism workshop at least once a month, on a Sunday, in place of a Bible sermon. The workshop shares the Christians responsibility to reach the lost, God's teaching on evangelism, the methods a person can do in sharing Jesus. JP focuses on individual accountability to invite people to church and to Bible studies. The goal is to foster a climate of evangelism. And to make this an intertwined piece of the churches culture.

***Stage Two:*** JP sets up multi-Bible study groups in places like Starbucks, college campus areas, Panera Bread, even people's homes, that get together each week. He has leaders in charge of these studies and he, himself helps with the group work. Christians at church are encouraged to invite coworkers, neighbors, etc. to the studies. The studies, act as door openers for creating relationships, and to stir up emotional investment in the members there. The studies are door openers for getting the non-Christian students to commit to a more personal study on salvation related themes, once they get involved in the group and the original study, (through attending/investing interest).

***Stage Three:*** Follow up. New converts are further studied with and included in spiritual activities. The elders/preachers coordinate with church members on the visitors, to encourage letters, cards, after they visit and to encourage meeting them when they do come to church, when people invite them to the assembly. People are also encouraged to invite people to church. Once there, folks invite the visitors to group studies. JP actively does this as well.

*These above stages by themselves have been very effective. But there are other effective formats to further mention...*

*Thoughts JP gives on ways to start conversations with people. Note: people have shared Jesus before this and have converted 80 people within a year. But these pointers can help.*

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=I5HYXwgppyyw>

---

***The University church of Christ has added 35 new souls (mostly from the community) in 7 months of doing this work. The group has grown from 300 people to over 400 people within a year.***

---

### ***Other Bible based ideas J.P. does and shares with others...to do.***

- ***Practicing hospitality matters.*** *Let people see the love of God, that His people have for each other and for those from the world. Besides hospitality being Biblical, this action is a way to build bonds and show tender affection to each other. Hospitality helps God's people to emotionally connect and encourage His children. JP and other saints from the congregation want to build bridges and connections with God's people who attend their church.*

*As individuals, these brethren invite different age groups from their local church, (teens, college, etc.) to the beach, bowling, etc. These groups also get together for Bible studies. Going the extra mile: when an event comes up, the brethren within a group are encouraged to invite their non-Christian friends. This gives JP and other saints a chance to build a rapport with non-Christians who are invited. As such people attend, they will become comfortable around these group of Christians.*

*Building relationships and rapport, helps make non-Christians more willing to accept an invite for a future Bible study event that the group is doing. The Christians within the group are encouraged to invite their friends to church or a groups Bible study in general. Yet those within the group are also encouraged to invite their friends to such events, when their friends start coming to the group events.*

*Why does this matter? When people get to know Christians within a group, they will be more comfortable and will be more willing to have a Bible study. When a non-Christian friend that has been attending the groups for a while, and has yet still not responded to an invite, know that...things may change, with enough time and long-term interaction. Such people may with time build up to "being ready" for a study.*

*This group invite format I outlined is effective. As we all know, its easier to say "yes" to a friend then to a stranger. This format can also be used to build bonds within the church. By inviting teens or college people to do such activities, as Bible studies, singings, and recreational get togethers, like potlucks, etc., your hospitality will build bonds and increase people's investment in one another, as well as in you as a fellow saint in Christ.*



*When you want to foster an evangelism activity, (or other spiritual events) those who know you, and thus feel comfortable, connected, etc. will be more likely to accept a spiritual event invite (from you) to serve. Yes, non-Christian and saints may step up when you only given invites, (even if they don't know you).*

*I've seen that time and time again. But when people have a bond with you and the trust factor is created through regular social interaction, the emotional feelings of friendship and love, will make a "yes" to an invite more likely. They will have created a "comfort zone" sense with you and thus will be more likely to step up, when they know you and thus know what to expect from you, (as a person, leader, etc.) in Bible studies and outreach events. This format needs to be used wisely. It can be abused and misused. The goal is to build bonds with saints and non-Christians. Let that be the chief focus of individual saints who choose to do this work.*

- 
- ***Prayer:*** *JP prays for people all the time in all occasions. Great openers for more discussion, relationship interactions, as well as bonding this action holds, is the NT example of payer. People need to know people care about them, and that God cares. Praying for someone can let people know they are loved. If people have a good event happening, ask God to bless them in it, if people are hurting, let prayer comfort them, pray for those who are suffering.*

*Ask if you can pray for them. If someone is struggling with something or wants to help in some event taking place, pray for them. For any situation, find ways to pray out loud for that person. Prays should be personal, warmly shared, and given in faith to God. A prayer can be given to bless someone as well. Asking God's favor on someone, lets them know you care.*

*Prayer does not just need to be given about sad things. Blessing, praise, and thanksgiving can also be used for special events and good things that are taking place in someone's life. Prayer can be used as an opener to build a dialogue. It can be used in evangelism events (campus work, door knocking, etc.) and in Bible studies. It can also be used when contacting Christian and non-Christian church visitors.*

*JP texts visitors the day after he gets their contact info after worship and asks if they there is anything they want prayed for? This action sends a message that the visitors are cared about and loved. It also says positive things about the sender of the text and indirectly about the church they are a part of.*

- 
- **Generating further contacts.** JP runs an ad on Facebook that gets Bible studies each month. He learned this method from Don Bunting. JP gears the ad to his local area where the church is at. The ad is focused on getting Bible studies. See link. <https://tampachristians.com>

For Website File to download for research/to pattern similar web creation, click [here](#).

---

### Google search engines ads:


Ad · <https://www.tampachristians.com/> ⋮

**Study the Bible - Schedule a Bible Study**

Study with someone in-person or virtually. Deepen your knowledge. Grow your faith. The goal of the Bible study is just that: to study the Bible!

[Español Tampa Christians](#) · [Contact Tampa Christians](#) · [FAQ Tampa Christians](#)

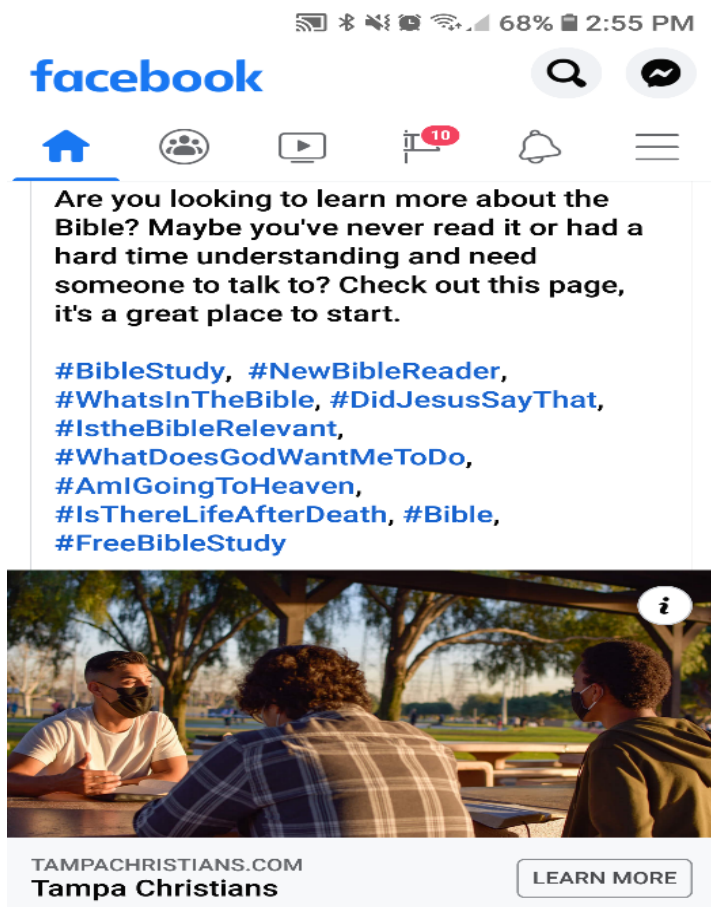
📍 14314 Bruce B Downs Blvd, Tampa, FL - Closed today · Hours ▾

Ad · **University Church of...** ⋮ 

4.7 ★★★★★ (33) · 8.0 mi

Church of Christ · Closed

Study with someone in-person or virtually. Deepen your knowledge. Grow your faith.

**FACEBOOK AD EXAMPLE:**

JP is the paid evangelist at the University church of Christ.

Website: <https://www.universitychurchofchrist.org>

Church Address: 14314 Bruce B Downs Blvd, Tampa, FL

For more ideas on friendship evangelism see our group evangelism training page  
<https://www.evangelismworkersoftampabay.com/copy-of-online-training-and-group-rec>

## A. Example of Jon Rowe

*Jon Rowe's is an evangelist in CA. He's one of the best out there. What I do know of his work in matters of sharing Jesus impresses me. His outreach method of getting a Bible study started, after talking with someone you meet has converted others to the Lord. His training and lifestyle commitment to soul-saving has made Jon Rowe one of the best evangelists in the country. By God's working, he has generated (through actively sharing the Word) about 40 baptisms a year. He retains about 35 percent of those he brings to the Lord. Those he's trained have brought dozens or more a year to the Lord. Folks have replicated his numbers. You can Facebook friend him to see the baptisms and personal evangelism work he does. He shares this on his [profile page](#).*

Jon Rowe learned this approach from [WeCare ministry](#). WeCare was founded by Larry and supported by his wife Peggy West. This training group used to go to COC congregations and train them in outreach. They used to be active in the US. WeCare would go door-knocking in groups of 100s (for a week event) and bring 100s to Jesus.

WeCare ministry also recorded their [success stats](#) on the door-knocking events they did. Here is an [article](#) of success they say they've had doing door-knocking. They have a reported 40-50 retention rate of keeping those they save, (through Christ). But this comes from a supportive group dynamic, (like weekly grounding/teaching new converts in Bible studies, including them in worship activities and spiritual activities/outreach work outside of the church, befriending new converts/having them in homes, getting church members to build bonds with them, etc. ) which helps with that scenario. Here is WeCares [event schedule](#) if interested in reading it. They used the tools Jon Rowe used, (which we'll cover in this post and future training group classes).

WeCare made/Jon Rowe use [StarBible.com](#) to share the salvation story. The marked-up Bible has a step-by-step process where it has you turn to verse number one, to share a truth, then to verse number 2, etc. The teaching comes straight from the Bible and takes about an hour to share.

You can use your own Bibles to mark up the same areas if wished. You can see the Bible chain passages laid out in detail for study [here](#). Jon Rowe has two StarBibles, which he uses to teach and to have the other person use to follow in the study. Common excuses and common yes responses are listed by WeCare ministries and by brother Jon Rowe, for people to role play (one as teacher and the other as the person being approached). The document is called "Salvation Flow Chart." Listen/watch our evangelism group's teaching video class recording [here](#). To learn more about how to use this method see this link. [www.evangelismworkersoftampabay.com/copy-of-online-training-and-group-rec](http://www.evangelismworkersoftampabay.com/copy-of-online-training-and-group-rec). I've also added my ideas and thoughts on this method at my evangelism page. Jon Rowe does evangelism workshops. These are worth having your church do.

**Study his excellent evangelism training videos. He's done workshops/gospel meeting across the US country. Here are sermon [videos](#) of his workshops for those interested.**

**Jon Rowe is the evangelist at the Southwest church of Christ in AZ**

**Church address: 8720 W. Indian School Rd., Phoenix, AZ 85037**

**Website <https://swazcoc.com>**

---